Thank you very much for choosing a new Chery vehicle.

To know how to correctly operate and maintain your vehicle, please take the time to read this manual carefully.

After you read this manual, please leave it in the vehicle for future reference. Please leave this manual in the vehicle at the same time of resale, as the new owner will also need to read the information in it.

All the information and specifications in this manual are current at the time of printing.

Remember that Chery authorized service station knows your vehicle best and has factory trained technicians and OEM parts which will guarantee your satisfaction. Do not use non-OEM parts or accessories to modify your vehicle. Modifying vehicle will affect the vehicle maneuverability, safety or durability.

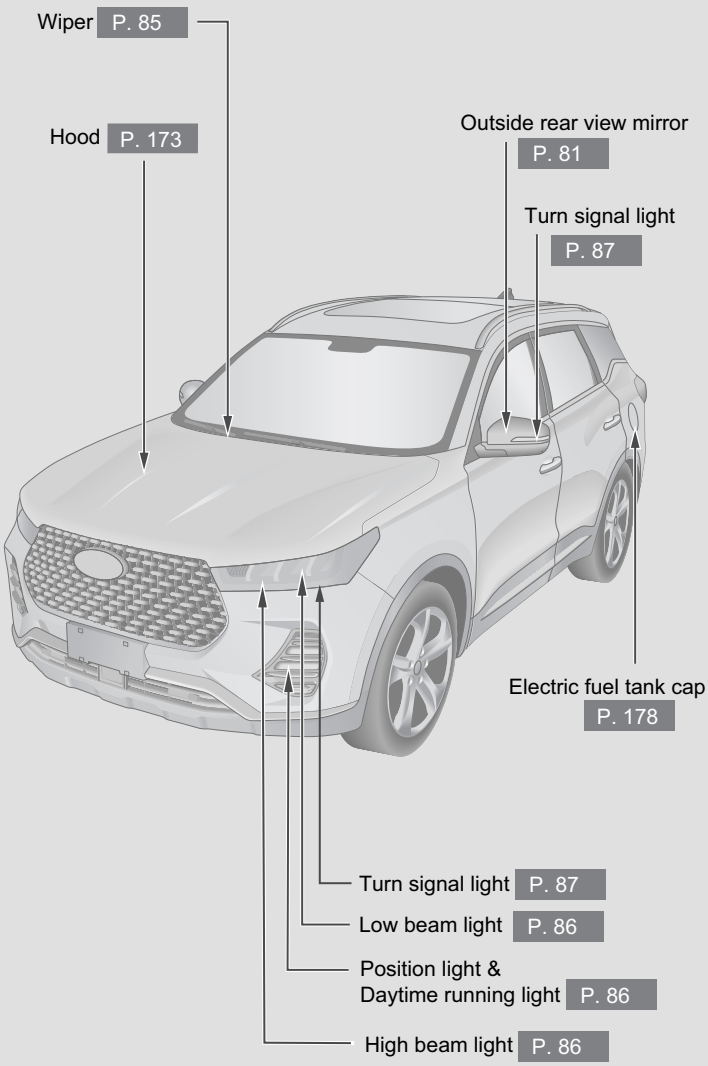
Depending on specification of equipment and features of your vehicle, some descriptions and illustrations may differ from that on your vehicle.

All data, descriptions and illustrations provided in this manual cannot serve as the basis for lodging a claim.

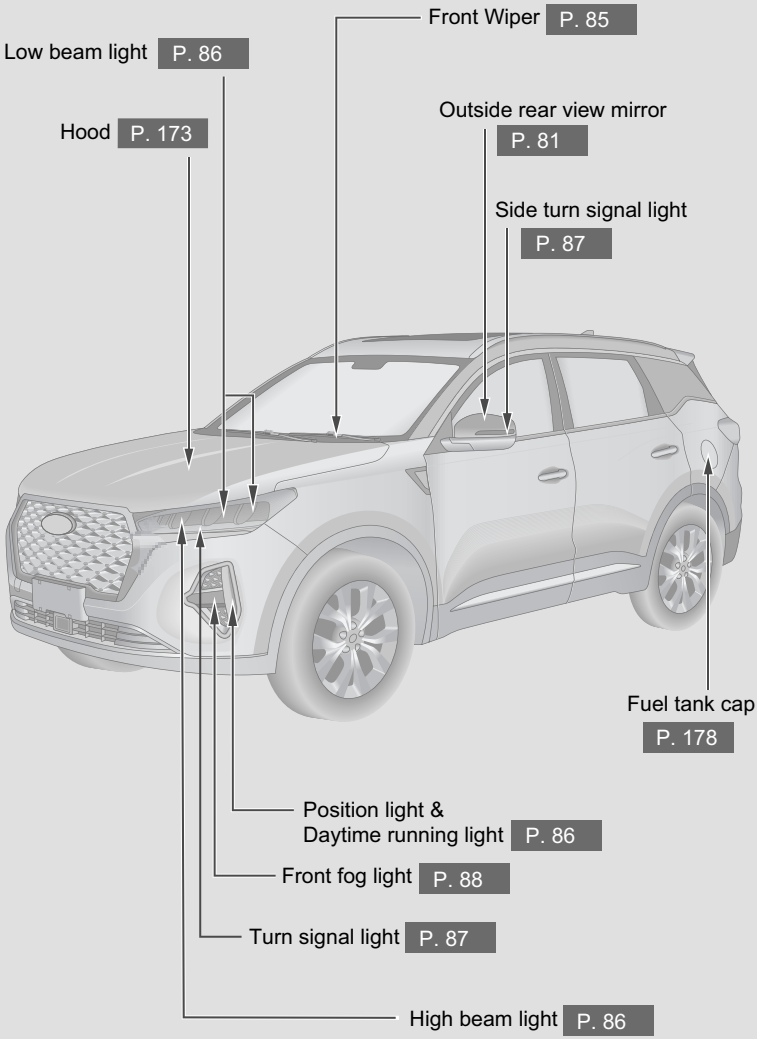
Wish you a pleasant driving!

Version No: T1EOM21EN04
Issued August 2021

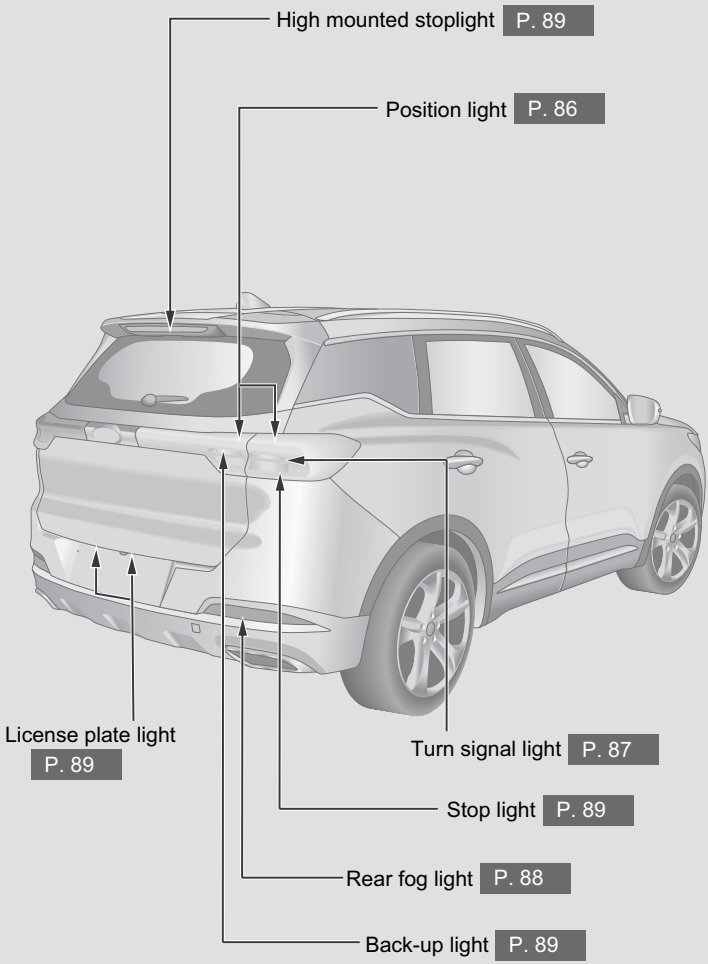
Type A


Wiper P. 85
Hood P. 173
Outside rear view mirror P. 81
Turn signal light P. 87
Electric fuel tank cap P. 178
Turn signal light P. 87
Low beam light P. 86
Position light & Daytime running light P. 86
High beam light P. 86

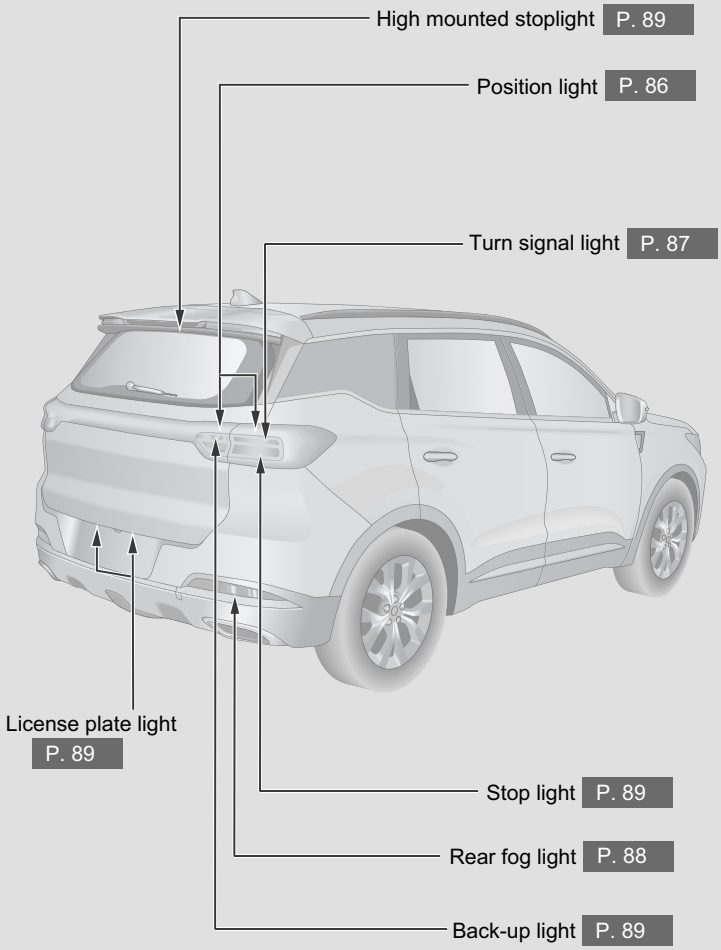
Type B

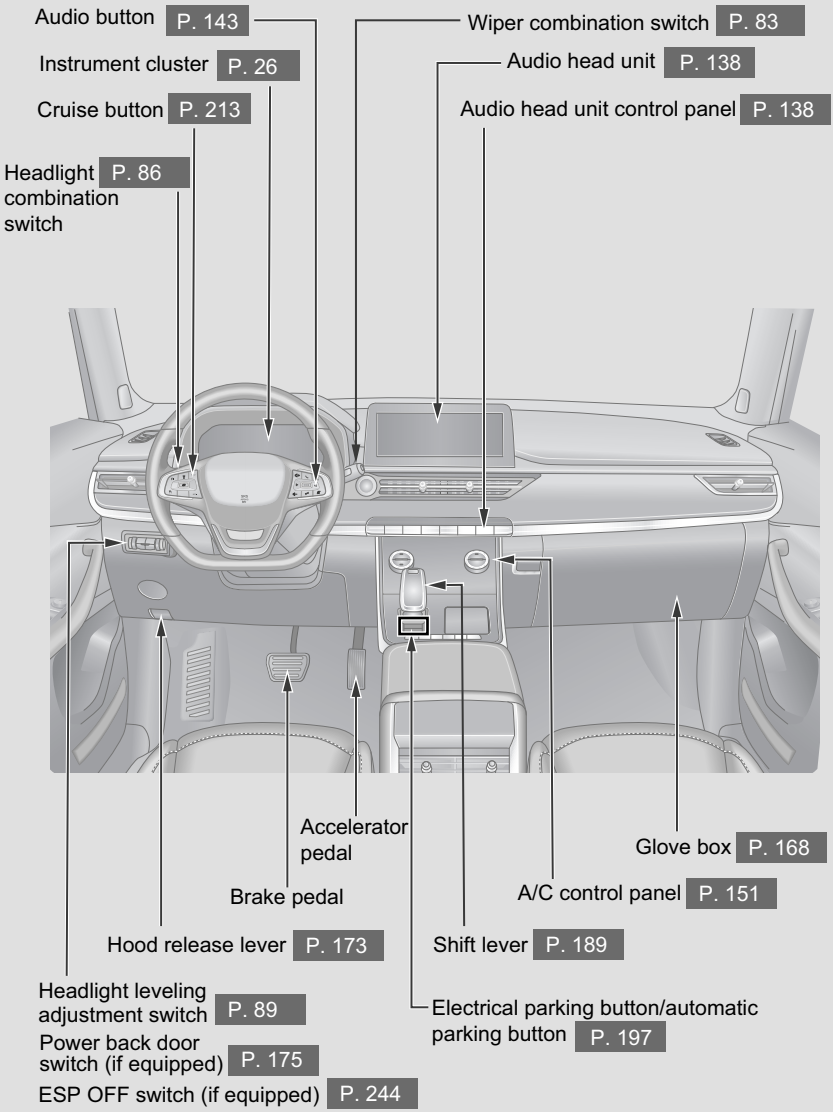

Front Wiper P. 85
Low beam light P. 86
Hood P. 173
Outside rear view mirror P. 81
Side turn signal light P. 87
Fuel tank cap P. 178
Position light & Daytime running light P. 86
Front fog light P. 88
Turn signal light P. 87
High beam light P. 86

Type A


High mounted stoplight P. 89
Position light P. 86
License plate light P. 89
Turn signal light P. 87
Stop light P. 89
Rear fog light P. 88
Back-up light P. 89

Type B


High mounted stoplight P. 89
Position light P. 86
Turn signal light P. 87
License plate light P. 89
Stop light P. 89
Rear fog light P. 88
Back-up light P. 89



Take the vehicle with automatic transmission for example

1. INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate 4
Chery Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection ...11
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving Fuel 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 14
After Starting Engine 15
When Driving 15
Parking Operations 16
Parking on Slope 16
Check the Exhaust System 18

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 18

1-10. Precautions when Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces 19
Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21
Tire Chains 22

2. PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster (3.5-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview 26
Information Display Area 28
Driving Information 29
Setting 32

2-2. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Color)

Instrument Cluster Overview 35
Information Display Area 37
Driving Information 38
Setting 43

2-3. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Composite)

Instrument Cluster Overview 47
Information Display Area 49
Driving Information 50
Setting 55

2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview 60
Information Display Area 62
Driving Information 63
Setting 67

2-5. Instrument Cluster Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 73

2-6. Steering Wheel

Horn 78
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 78
Adjusting Steering Wheel 79

2-7. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror ... 80
Outside Rear View Mirror 81

2-8. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 83
Wiper Blade Replacement 85

2-9. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 86
Interior Lighting 89
Follow Me Home Function 90
Smart Vehicle Locating Function 91
Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped) 91
Light Fogging Instructions 92

2-10. Seats

Head Restraints 93
Front Seats 94
Second Row Seats 96
Seat Heating (If Equipped) 97

2-11. Seat Belts

Seat Belts 98
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 102

2-12. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems 103
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 105
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 106
Installing Child Restraint Systems 107
Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) 113

3. INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 116
Effective Range 119
Anti-Theft System 121
Keyless Entry 122
Vehicle Fortifying 123
Smart Key Vehicle Locating Function 125
Remote start (if equipped) 125

3-2. Doors

Doors Lock Switch 125
Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle 126
Door Mechanical Switch 126
Child-Protection Lock 127

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 128
Window Remote Control Function 130
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped) 131

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (A) 132
Panoramic Moon Roof (B) 134
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 135
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 135

3-5. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging 136

3-6. Audio and Entertainment System

Audio Control Panel (No disc DVD) 138
Audio Control Panel (Inter-vehicle Head Unit) 139
Audio Operation 140
Audio Setting 142
Audio Button 143
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 144
Phone-link 144

3-7. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning System 151
Automatic Air Conditioning System 155
Mode Adjustment 160
Air Outlets Airflow Control 161
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation 162
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 164
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 164
One-button Purification Function (If Equipped) 165
Anion Function (If Equipped) 166
Front - Windshield Heating (If Equipped) 166
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped) 166
Interior Active Ventilation and Automatic Cleaning (If Equipped) 167
Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling / Warming Function (If Equipped) 167

3-8. Storage Space

Storage Space 168

3-9. Power Outlet

Power Outlet 171
USB Port 172

3-10. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 173

3-11. Hood

Hood 173

3-12. Back Door

Back Door 174
Power Back Door (If Equipped) 175
Back Door Emergency Opening 178

3-13. Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap 178

4. DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. ENGINE START STOP Switch

Vehicle Power Mode 184
Electronic Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission) 185

4-2. Starting and Turning off Engine

Normal Starting and Turning off 186
Starting and Turning off in Emergency 188
Adaptive Engine Control System 188

4-3. Transmission

Manual Transmission 189
Automatic Transmission 191

4-4. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 196

4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 197
Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) 200
Vacuum Booster 201
Brake 202

4-6. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS) 203
Modification and Disposal of Airbag System Components 210

5. DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) 212

5-2. Cruise System (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System 213
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) 214
Active Speed Limit 220

5-3. Hill Descent Control System (HDC) (If Equipped)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC) 221

5-4. Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane Assist System 222
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) 224
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) 225

5-5. Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) (If Equipped)

Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA) 226
Door Open Warning System (DOW) 227
Rear Cross Traffic Alert System (RCTA) 228
Rear Collision Warning System (RCW) 228

5-6. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) (If Equipped)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) 229

5-7. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) 231

5-8. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped) 233

5-9. Parking Assist System (If Equipped)

Parking View Monitor System 235
Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped) 236
Parking Radar System 240

5-10. Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) ..244
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 245
Extended Function 247

6. IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Vehicle Emergency Rescue 250
Hazard Light 250
Reflective Vest 251
Warning Triangle 251
Spare Tools 252

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving 252
If Engine Coolant Temperature is High 256
If Battery is Depleted 257
If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally 259

6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle 260
Installing Towing Eyelet 261
Emergency Towing 262

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 263
Checking Fuse 264
Replacing Fuse 264

6-5. ERA-GLONASS (If Equipped)

ERA-GLONASS 265

7. MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance 268
Chery authorized service station is at your service 268
Safety Check 269

7-2. Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance 270
Checking Oil Level 271
Checking Transmission Fluid Level 272
Checking Brake Fluid Level 273
Checking Coolant Level 273
Checking Radiator and Condenser 275

Checking Drive Belt 275
Checking Tires 276
Tire Rotation 277
Checking Battery 278
Checking Air conditioning filter 278
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 278
Checking Wiper Blades 279

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Card 281
Maintenance Schedule .. 283
Technical Data 287

8. SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 290
Vehicle Product Label 291
Engine Number 291
Microwave Window 291

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions 292
Vehicle Model and Type 293
Vehicle Weight 294
Vehicle Performance 295
Engine Performance 296
Fuel System 296
Cooling System 297
Suspension System 297
Steering System 298
Brake System 298
Wheel Alignment 299
Wheel and Tire 300
Battery 300
Light Bulb Specification 301
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components 302

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

ALPHABETICAL INDEX

INTRODUCTION

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual 2
Table of Contents 2
Pictorial Index 2
Index 2

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual 3

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

User Registration Certificate 4
Chery Delivery Card 5

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 7

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection 11
Delivery Inspection Certificate 11

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in 12

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving Fuel 13

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check 14
Before Starting Engine 14
After Starting Engine 15
When Driving 15
Parking Operations 16
Parking on Slope 16
Check the Exhaust System 18

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving 18

1-10. Precautions when Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces 19
Driving Through Water 19

1-11. Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips 20
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21
Tire Chains 22

1-1. How to Read This Manual

How to Read This Manual

There are three methods available for you to find the information you need in this manual. Here is a brief introduction of each method.

Table of Contents

Consult the general "Table of Contents" to determine which chapter of the USER MANUAL contains the information you need and the "Chapter Contents" to determine its accurate location.

Pictorial Index

The "Pictorial Index" is a helpful assistant to find the required information quickly, especially when you are not familiar with the component name.

Index

This is the fastest method for you to find the information you need. The index contains a complete listing of all the important vehicle terminologies. More details about the index, refer to Page 305.

1-2. Symbols in the Manual

Symbols in the Manual

The following symbols are used in this manual to draw your attention to the information of particular importance. In order to minimize the risks as much as possible, please read the instructions on these symbols carefully before driving, and make sure to follow them.

WARNING

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your property, personal injury or even death.

CAUTION

Indicates a potentially hazardous situation which, if not avoided, may result in damage to your vehicle and its equipment, reducing the vehicle's life span.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Indicates that the waste must be handled or disposed according to the local environmental protection regulations, otherwise, the environment will be contaminated.

READ

Indicates that the relevant chapter in this manual must be read before any operation.

WARNING and CAUTION relating to personal safety and vehicle safety in this manual are very important. Make sure everyone in the vehicle follows these instructions carefully. So that, not only you can enjoy driving pleasure but also vehicle can be kept in good condition.

1-3. New Vehicle Inspection

Prior to your purchase, the Chery authorized service station has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations of Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. The service station will record the delivery date and affix its official seal to the User Registration Certificate. Before you sign the User Registration Certificate, the authorized dealer will provide you with instructions regarding your vehicle's overall performance and some basic knowledge about its features and regular operation according to the Vehicle Delivery Card.

User Registration Certificate

Model Code	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Seal of Dealer:	
Signature of Dealer:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: ● VEHICLE ● USER MANUAL ● PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer:	

Chery Delivery Card

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Vehicle Performance	1	Engine	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Engine oil, brake fluid, power steering fluid (if equipped), coolant, windshield washer fluid	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	VIN code, engine number and nameplate etc.	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Whole set of vehicle keys	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	All lights of vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Windshield and painted surfaces	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Speedometer, tachometer and instrument cluster LCD display	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Tires, spare tires, spare tools and USER MANUAL	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Seats, seat belts, A/C switches and outlets, glove box and sun visors	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Windows, rear view mirrors, windshield wipers, windshield washers, battery, reversing radar system, horns, moon roof (if equipped), audio device and antenna	YES ☐	NO ☐

Category	No.	Items	Whether Pass Inspection and Explain Clearly	
Basic Knowledge About Operation	1*	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher	YES ☐	NO ☐
		E22-E100	YES ☐	NO ☐
	2	Normal operation during the break-in period	YES ☐	NO ☐
	3	Operation of all the vehicle lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	4	Understanding warning lights and indicator lights	YES ☐	NO ☐
	5	Correct time/mileage of the maintenance schedule	YES ☐	NO ☐
	6	Vehicle maintenance in winter/summer	YES ☐	NO ☐
	7	Thorough understanding of the cooling system and normal usage of the coolant	YES ☐	NO ☐
	8	Correct operation of air conditioning	YES ☐	NO ☐
	9	Precautions during starting the vehicle	YES ☐	NO ☐
	10	Correct operation of audio system	YES ☐	NO ☐
	11	Correct usage of moon roof (if equipped)	YES ☐	NO ☐
Signature of Sales Clerk: Date:				
Signature of User: Date:				

*: Please use the fuel recommended by Chery authorized dealers.

1-4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card

Chery authorized service station will provide a dedicated service consultant when you purchase your vehicle. If you have any questions concerning your vehicle, please consult the consultant.

Sheet One (for User)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at the Chery authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the USER MANUAL to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
☐	Have informed the Chery service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person-to-Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminding.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
☐	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.
☐	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
☐	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

Sheet Two (for Dealer of Sales & Service)

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
1. Vehicle Delivery and Inspection (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Have introduced the basic operation of the vehicle to the user and performed the delivery inspection.
☐	Have explained the warranty policies to the user.
☐	Have explained the precautions of driving to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of regular maintenance and the maintenance interval time/mileage to the user.
☐	Have explained the importance of having regular maintenance/vehicle repair performed at the Chery authorized service station to the user.
☐	Have delivered the USER MANUAL to the user and reminded him/her to read it.
☐	Have informed the Chery service hotline function and how to use it.
2. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Mode Introduction (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	If you have questions and demands, consult a service consultant.
☐	The service consultant is the only person authorized by the dealer to answer the user's questions.
☐	Have assigned a dedicated service consultant to each user for "Person-to-Person" service.
☐	If the user is not fully satisfied with the service consultant, the user can select another service consultant.

Name of User:	Date of Purchase:
Dealer of Sales & Service:	Model:
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN):	
The following items should be confirmed by the user:	
3. Main Work Introduction on Service Consultant (Mark a " √ " for " Yes " and a " × " for Other Conditions):	
☐	Service reception during service and maintenance.
☐	Regular maintenance reminding.
☐	Answer the service/maintenance consultation.
☐	Service/maintenance reservation acceptance.
☐	Annual inspection reminding/acceptance.
☐	Regular greeting revisit, service activity reminded revisit and important holiday greeting.
☐	Other demands from the user.
4. "Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Relationship Establishment:	
Service consultant business card	
Signature of User/Date:	
Signature of Service Consultant/Date:	

1-5. New Vehicle Inspection

New Vehicle Inspection

The dealer of sales & service has inspected your vehicle according to the regulations of Chery before deliver the vehicle to you. The dealer of sales & service of Chery Auto should fill the delivery date in the inspection certificate and affix the official seal of dealer unit.

Dealer unit will verify the vehicle to you in accordance with "Chery Vehicle Delivery Card", and introduce the knowledge of using the vehicle, which will be signed by salesman and user.

Delivery Inspection Certificate

IN WITNESS WHEREOF, this vehicle has pass delivery inspection as regulated by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. and quality meets technical specification of Chery.

Vehicle Model	
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)	
Engine Number or Transmission Number	
Vehicle Registration Number	
Official Seal of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	
Delivery Date	
User	
Address	
E-mail	
Telephone	
Have provided and explained the following items for me: ● VEHICLE ● USER MANUAL ● PRE-DELIVERY INSPECTION	
Signature of User:	
Signature of Dealer of Sales & Service:	

1-6. New Vehicle Break-in

New Vehicle Break-in

Since the frictional resistance between the moving parts of new vehicle is much larger in the initial use than normal conditions. The break-in effect of initial use will have a great impact on the vehicle's life, operation reliability and economy, so the use of new vehicle must strictly enforce the regulations. The break-in period is 3,000 kilometers in general.

■ Driving regulations of new vehicle break-in period

Within the first 1,000 km:

- Prohibit driving at full speed;
- Driving speed should not be more than 100 km/h;
- Avoid driving at maximum speed in each gear.

Within the first 1,000 - 1,500 km:

- Driving speed can be gradually increased to the highest speed;
- Engine speed can be gradually increased to the maximum allowable speed.

■ Driving recommendations after break-in period:

- When driving a vehicle, the maximum speed which engine allows to run in short time is 6,000 r/min. When shifting manually, shift to nearby high gear while the tachometer pointer reaches the red indicator zone.
- Engine speed should not be too low while driving, it is necessary to shift to the appropriate gear. When the engine is cold, do not run the engine at its maximum speed whether in neutral or in other driving gears.

■ Tire and wheel break-in recommendations:

When starting to use new tires, the best adhesion is not available. Therefore, new tires also need break-in, so the vehicle should be driven slowly and especially carefully within the first 100 km of driving.

■ Braking system break-in recommendations:

New brake lining also need break-in. Because the brakes cannot provide the ideal brake friction during the first 200 km. If the braking efficiency is slightly worse at this stage, increasing depression force on the pedal appropriately. This condition also applies to the each replacement of braking lining later.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Avoid running engine at unnecessary high speed. Switching to a high gear in time is helpful to save fuel, reduce operation noise and reduce environmental pollution.

1-7. How to Save Fuel and Extend Life of Vehicle

Saving Fuel

Saving fuel is largely determined by vehicle conditions and driving habit. Do not overuse the vehicle, which also helps to extend vehicle's life.

The followings are specific tips for fuel saving:

1. Make sure to maintain proper tire inflation pressure. Insufficient tire inflation pressure will lead to tire wear and fuel waste (More details, refer to "8-2. Scheduled Maintenance").
2. The vehicle should not be loaded with unnecessary weight. Heavy load increases engine load, resulting in high fuel consumption.
3. Avoid warm-up idling for a long time. The vehicle can be driven once the engine runs smoothly. The warm-up time in cold winter will be longer than other seasons.
4. Accelerate slowly and smoothly. Avoid sudden starts.
5. Avoid engine idling for a long time. If you need to park vehicle and wait for a long time, you should turn off the engine and turn it on again later.
6. Avoid engine out of gear or overspeed. Select proper gears according to driving road conditions.
7. Avoid continuous acceleration and deceleration. Stop-and-go driving will waste the fuel.
8. Avoid unnecessary stopping and braking. You should keep a stable speed. Driving following the traffic lights can minimize parking times, or take full advantage of road without traffic lights to drive vehicle. Maintain a proper driving distance with other vehicles to avoid sudden braking. It will also reduce brake wear.
9. Avoid areas with heavy traffic or traffic jams as much as you can.
10. Do not hold your foot on clutch or brake pedals for a long time. This will cause premature wear, overheating and high fuel consumption.
11. Keep a proper vehicle speed on the highway. The faster vehicle speed, the more fuel consumption. Decreasing vehicle speed will save fuel.
12. Keep proper front wheel alignment. Avoid collision with road curbs and reduce your vehicle speed when driving on rough road surfaces. Improper front wheel alignment will not only quicken tire wear, but also increase engine load.
13. Avoid contacting vehicle chassis with mud, etc.
14. Adjust vehicle and keep it in optimal working condition. Dirty air filter, improper valve clearance, dirty spark plugs, dirty oil and grease, brakes without adjusted properly, etc. can reduce engine performance and waste fuel. You must perform maintenance periodically if you want to extend your vehicle's life and reduce your driving costs. Your vehicle needs to be serviced

more frequently if always driving under severe conditions.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Never turn off engine when driving downhill. The power steering system and brake system will not operate normally when engine is not running.

1-8. Precautions Before Driving Vehicle

Safety Check

It is better to do a safety check before driving vehicle. A few minutes of checking can help ensure safe and pleasant driving.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> If you perform this check in an enclosed garage, make sure there is adequate ventilation.

Before Starting Engine

■ Outside vehicle

1. Tires (including spare tire): Check tire pressure with a tire pressure gauge and carefully check tires for cuts, damage or excessive wear.
2. Wheel bolts: Make sure no wheel bolts are missing or loose.
3. Fluid leaks: After the vehicle has been parked for a while, check underneath for leaking fuel, oil, coolant or other fluids (Water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal).
4. Lights: Make sure the headlights, daytime running lights, stop lights, fog lights, turn signal lights and other lights are working properly.
5. Intake grilles: Remove snow, leaves or other obstructions from the intake grilles in front of windshield.

■ Inside vehicle

1. Spare tools: Make sure you have spare tools, such as jack, wheel bolt wrench and spare tire.
2. Seat belts: Check if the buckles can be locked securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
3. Instrument cluster and controls: Especially make sure the malfunction indicator lights, indicator lights, and controls are working properly.
4. Brakes: Make sure the pedal has enough clearance.

■ Engine compartment and engine

1. Spare fuses: Make sure spare fuses are available. All the fuses with amperage ratings designated on the fuse box cover should be provided.
2. Coolant level: Make sure coolant level is proper (More details, refer to "8-2. Checking Coolant Level").
3. Battery and cables: Check for corroded or loose terminals and a cracked case. Check the cables for good condition and connections.
4. Wiring: Check for damaged, loose or broken wires.
5. Fuel lines: Check the lines for leaks or loose connections.

■ Hood

Make sure the hood is locked completely before driving. Otherwise, the hood may tilt up and block front view when vehicle is moving, which could lead to an accident.

After Starting Engine

1. Exhaust system: Listen for any leakage. Repair any leaks immediately if such condition occurs (Please refer to "Exhaust Gas" in this section).
2. Engine oil level: Stop vehicle on level ground, turn off engine and wait for 5 minutes, pull out the dipstick to check if the engine oil level is proper (More details, refer to "8-2. Checking Engine Oil Level").

When Driving

1. Gauges and meters: Make sure each the indication of gauges and meters are working properly.
2. Brakes: At a safe place, check that the vehicle does not be pulled to one side when the brakes are applied.
3. Other abnormal conditions: Check for loose parts and leaks. Listen for abnormal noises.

Parking Operations

Proper parking is an important part of safety driving, park the vehicle in a place with wide road, good view without affecting traffic. Parking operation steps are as follows:

1. Depress clutch (vehicle with manual transmission) and brake pedal until the vehicle is completely stopped.
2. Confirm that the electronic parking is enabled.
3. For vehicle with automatic transmission: Move shift lever to "P" position. For vehicle with manual transmission: Move shift lever to neutral position.
4. Turn engine start stop switch to OFF mode.

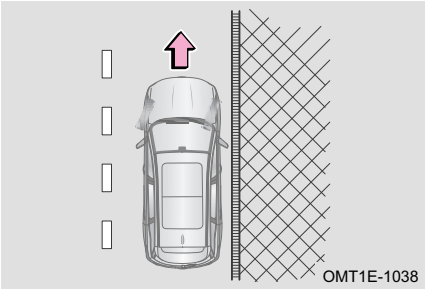
⚠ CAUTION

When you leave vehicle, make sure to lock your vehicle and carry the vehicle's key with you.

Parking on Slope

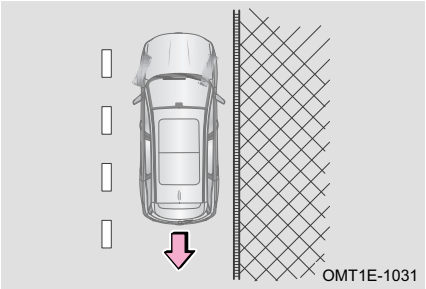
Parking vehicle on a slope is mainly by brake force of park brake. Failure to apply park brake or park brake malfunction may cause the vehicle slide downwards along slope and injury personal or damage to vehicle. When parking on a slope, it is better to face tires toward one side of vehicle, to prevent vehicle from moving accidentally.

■ Parking on downhill with curb



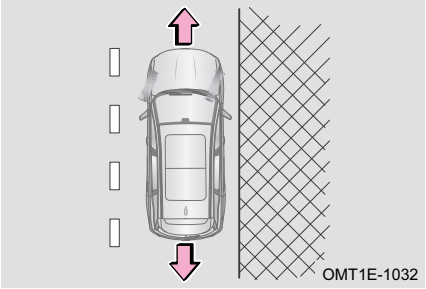
If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to right by a certain angle to make front part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding forward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill with curb



If there is curb on roadside, turn steering wheel to left by a certain angle to make rear part of front right wheel close to or against the curb, to prevent vehicle from sliding backward along the slope, then apply the park brake.

■ Parking on uphill or downhill (without curb)



If there is no curb on roadside, turn steering wheel right by a large angle, to prevent vehicle from driving into center of road after sliding forward/backward along the slope. Turn steering wheel to side of road so that vehicle is far away from center of road when moving, then apply the park brake.

■ Carrying passengers

Before driving, make sure all passengers sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Do not let the passengers sit in the places where there are no seats and seat belts, as they are likely to be seriously injured during a collision.

■ Locking the vehicle

- When leaving the vehicle unattended, carry smart key with you and lock all the doors, even if parking the vehicle in the garage or on the sidewalk in front of your house.
- Park the vehicle in bright and spacious places as much as possible, and do not expose valuable items.

■ Exhaust gas

- Avoid inhaling the engine exhaust gas. It contains carbon monoxide (CO), which is a harmful, colorless and odorless gas. It can cause unconsciousness or even death after inhaling.
- Make sure the exhaust system has no leakage holes or loose connections. The exhaust system should be checked usually. If a change in exhaust gas sound is found, please have the system checked immediately.
- Do not run the engine in a garage or an enclosed area except for the time needed to drive the vehicle in or out. The exhaust gas cannot escape, which may cause serious injury.

- Do not stay in a parked vehicle for a long time with the engine running. If it is unavoidable, vehicle should be parked in an spacious area and adjust heating and cooling system to forcibly introduce outside air into vehicle.
- Keep the back door closed while driving. An open or unclosed back door may cause exhaust gas to enter the vehicle.
- To achieve proper operation of vehicle ventilation system, keep intake grilles free of snow, leaves, or other obstructions.
- If you smell exhaust fumes in vehicle, open windows to allow fresh air to enter and check vehicle condition.

Check the Exhaust System

The exhaust system should be checked in the following situations:

1. When you smell the exhaust fumes;
2. When you notice a change in the sound of exhaust system;
3. When exhaust system is damaged due to vehicle collision;
4. When lifting the vehicle for inspection and repair.

1-9. Off-road Driving Precautions

Off-road Driving

Always observe the following precautions to minimize the risk of serious personal injury or damage to your vehicle:

- Be careful when driving off the road. Do not drive in dangerous areas.
- Place both hands on the outer ring of the steering wheel when driving off the road.
- Always check your brakes for effectiveness immediately after driving on the road covered with sand, mud, shallow water or snow.
- The driver and all passengers should fasten their seat belts whenever vehicle is moving.

⚠ WARNING

- After driving on road surfaces covered with tall grass, mud, gravel, sand, rivers, etc., check if there is grass, bush, paper, rags, stone, sand, etc. adhering to or trapped on underbody. Clear off any above materials from the underbody. If driving vehicle with those matters trapped on or adhering to the underbody, a breakdown or fire could occur.
- When driving off road or on rugged terrain, high speed driving, jumping, sharp turning and striking objects, etc. are forbidden. Failure to do so may cause loss of control or vehicle rollover, resulting in death or severe personnel injury. You are also risking expensive damage to your vehicle's suspension and chassis.

1-10.Precautions when Driving in the Rain

When Driving on Slippery Road Surfaces

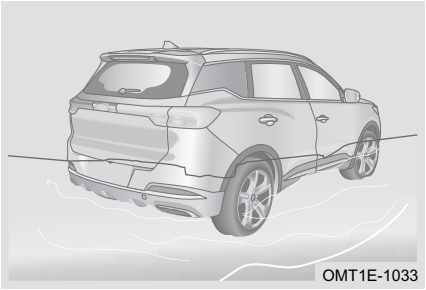
Drive carefully when it is raining, because visibility will be reduced, windows may become fogged-up and road will be slippery.

- Do not drive at high speed when driving on an expressway in rain, because there may be a layer of water between tires and road surface, preventing steering system and brakes from operating properly.

CAUTION

- Sudden braking, acceleration and steering on slippery road surfaces may cause tire slippage and reduce your ability to control vehicle, resulting in an accident.
- Sudden changes in engine speed, such as sudden engine braking may cause vehicle to skid, resulting in an accident.
- After driving through a puddle, lightly depress brake pedal to make sure brakes are functioning properly. Wet brake lining may prevent brakes from functioning properly. If brake lining on one side is wet and not functioning properly, steering control may be affected, resulting in an accident.

Driving Through Water



The vehicle could be seriously damaged when driving on a road that has flooded after heavy rain. If driving through water is unavoidable, check the depth of the water and drive slowly and carefully.

1. When you are driving through water, make sure that the engine runs properly and that the steering and braking system work normally. When driving smoothly through water, you should switch to low gear and avoid a sudden depression of the accelerator pedal or a rush driving. Doing so may prevent water from splashing into the engine.
2. Depress and hold accelerator pedal while driving, make sure vehicle has adequate and stable power. You should drive through without half-way stopping, gear shifting or sharp turning.
3. If vehicle stalls in water, never restart it immediately to prevent further damage to engine. The vehicle should be towed to a safe place where the water is shallow to find out the cause.

⚠ CAUTION

- Never drive through water that is deeper than wheel rim.
- Water intrusion into engine can cause it to stall, or cause serious internal damage.
- Water can wash the grease from the wheel bearing, causing rusting and premature abrasion.
- Driving through water may cause damage to your vehicle drive train components. Always visually inspect your vehicle's fluids (e.g. engine oil, transmission fluid, etc.) for signs of leakage after driving through water. Do not continue to operate vehicle if any fluid leaks, as this may result in further damage.
- Vehicle traction and braking performance will decrease while driving through water. The braking distance will increase. Sand and mud that has accumulated around the brake discs may affect the braking efficiency and may damage the brake system components. After driving through water, slightly depress the brake pedal for several times to dry the brakes off.

1-11.Winter Driving Precautions

Winter Driving Tips

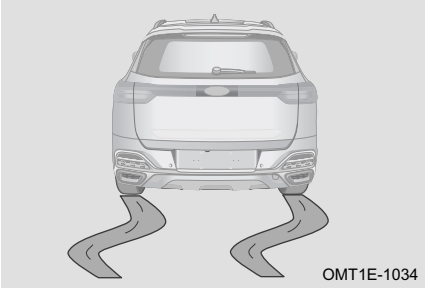
- Coolant: Make sure that coolant has anti-freezing function. Only use coolant recommended by Chery. More details about coolant type selection, refer to "7-2. Cooling System".
- Battery and cables: Low temperature will decrease power of battery. Sufficient power should be stored in battery for starting in winter.
- Oil: In winter, it is recommended to choose appropriate engine oil according to the local temperature condition. The lower viscosity at low temperature, the better fluidity at low temperature, indicating that the lower the ambient temperature at which the oil can be used. More details about oil type selection, refer to "7-2. Lubrication System".
- Door locks: Avoid door locks being frozen. Deicing agent or glycerin should be sprayed into door lock holes.
- Washer fluid: Use washer fluid containing antifreeze. This product is available at Chery authorized service stations and most vehicle component distributors.

- Mudguards: Avoid ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. Failure to do so may cause difficult steering. When driving in cold weather, you should often stop vehicle to check for ice and snow accumulation under mudguards. It is recommended that you should take some necessary emergency items with you depending on different driving destinations. Items that need to be put in vehicle: tire chains, window snow scraper, sand or salt bag, signal flasher, shovel, jumper cable, etc.

CAUTION

- Do not use water as a substitute for coolant.
- Do not use engine coolant or other alternatives washer fluid, otherwise vehicle paint will be damaged.

Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow



Rapid acceleration on slippery road surfaces, such as snow or ice covered roads, may cause the rear wheels slipping to right or left. Therefore, please drive at low speed and operate carefully.

It is possible to build up a layer of water film between the tire and road surface when driving on wet or slushy roads. This may prevent the steering and braking from operating properly. To reduce the torque and avoid slipping, you can use 2nd gear (vehicle with manual transmission) when starting off vehicle on ice or snow covered road surfaces. It is recommended that you enable ESP function on this occasion.

■ Driving out silt and ice and snow road

If drive wheel is stuck in silt or ice and snow, please attempt to shake vehicle at low speed and driving forward and backward repeatedly. Shift the shift lever between forward position and reverse position several times and depress accelerator pedal slightly. Avoid shifting the shift lever between forward position and reverse position for a long period of time, failure to do so may cause excessive transmission wear.

Tire Chains

Purchase a set of tire chains that match size of the vehicle tires.

Pay attention to the following precautions when installing and removing chains:

1. Follow local regulations when using chains;
2. Install and remove tire chains in a safe location;
3. Install tire chains by following the instructions provided with the tire chains;
4. Chains can only be installed on drive wheels;
5. It is recommended to use the beef tendon chains or rubber chains with a thickness not exceeding 12 mm, otherwise, tires, rims, drive system, brake system and wheel guard plates may be damaged, vehicle damage resulting from improper use of chains are not covered by warranty;
6. Please consult Chery authorized service station for details about wheels, tire size.

⚠ CAUTION

Observe the following precautions to reduce the risk of accidents. Failure to do so may result in the vehicle being unable to be driven safely, and may cause death or serious injury.

- Regulations regarding the use of tire chains vary depending on location and type of road. Always check local regulations before installing tire chains.
- Be sure to use chains that are suitable for your vehicle. Installing chain will effect vehicle handling, please drive carefully. Using improper chains or improper installing of chains may cause an accident and lead to injuries;
- Please follow the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the chains to install and remove chains, park the vehicle in a safe place before installation and removal. Be sure to turn off the engine before installing chains (automatic transmission is in P position), place the traffic warning signs if necessary;
- Do not drive vehicle more than 30 km/h when chains are installed on vehicle, or refer to the vehicle speed limit specified by the manufacturer of chains, whichever is lower. It should avoid dangerous road conditions such as bumps, potholes, sharp turns etc. when installing chains, do not turn steering wheel sharply, lock brake urgently, accelerate and decelerate suddenly etc.

PREPARATION FOR DRIVING

2-1. Instrument Cluster (3.5-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview 26
Information Display Area 28
Driving Information 29
Setting 32

2-2. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Color)

Instrument Cluster Overview 35
Information Display Area 37
Driving Information 38
Setting 43

2-3. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Composite)

Instrument Cluster Overview 47
Information Display Area 49
Driving Information 50
Setting 55

2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview 60
Information Display Area 62
Driving Information 63
Setting 67

2-5. Instrument Cluster Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator 73

2-6. Steering Wheel

Horn 78
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 78
Adjusting Steering Wheel 79

2-7. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror 80
Outside Rear View Mirror 81

2-8. Wiper System

Wiper Operation 83
Wiper Blade Replacement 85

2-9. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting 86
Interior Lighting 89
Follow Me Home Function 90
Smart Vehicle Locating Function 91
Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped) 91
Light Fogging Instructions 92

2-10. Seats

Head Restraints 93
Front Seats 94
Second Row Seats 96
Seat Heating (If Equipped) 97

2-11. Seat Belts

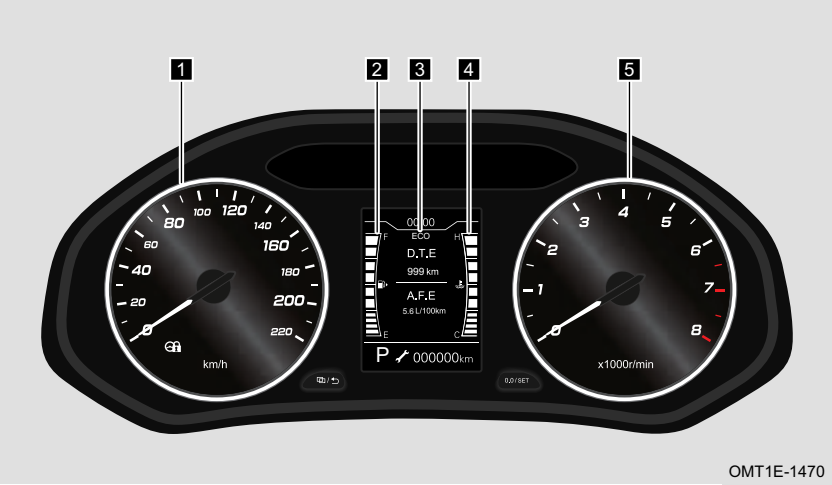
Seat Belts 98
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 102

2-12. Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems 103
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 105
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 106
Installing Child Restraint Systems 107
Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) 113

2-1. Instrument Cluster (3.5-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview



1 Speedometer

2 Fuel gauge

3 Information display area

4 Engine coolant temperature gauge

5 Tachometer

Speedometer

Speedometer: The current driving speed of vehicle (unit: km/h).

⚠ CAUTION
Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (For details, refer to "7-2.Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

Tachometer

Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1000 rpm).

After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range 6000 - 8000 rpm (Red scale on dial). Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

⚠ CAUTION
• Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period. • Do not keep engine speed at 6000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

Fuel Gauge

Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel of fuel tank.

When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

> READ
>
> When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turns or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.

Near C or in C area (low temperature range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive.

Near H or in H area (overheating range)

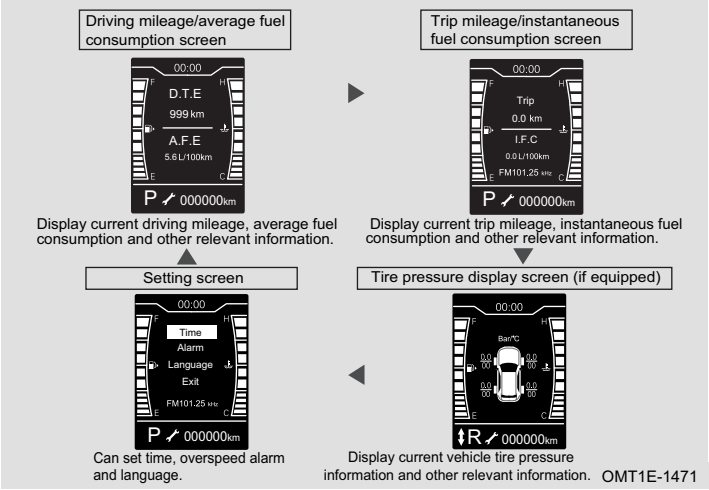
When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

> CAUTION
>
> - If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
> - Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Information Display Area

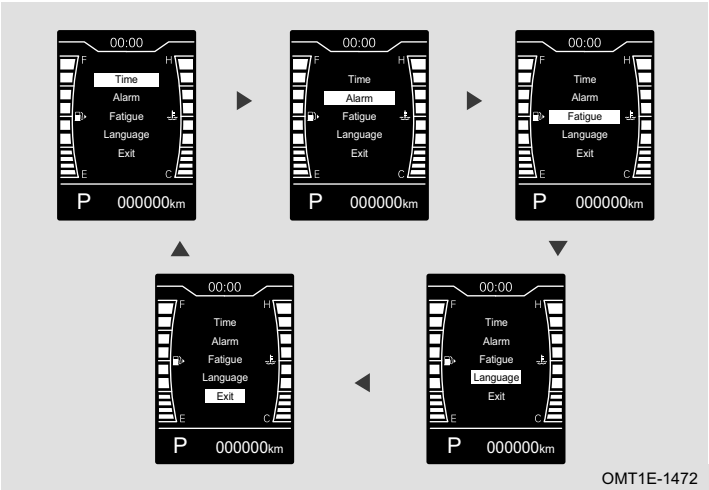
Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to cycle the following screens. On setting screen, short press right button "0.0/SET" of meter to enter setting screen.



Setting screen

Setting screen includes the following screens, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch to different settings. Short press right button "0.0/SET" of meter again to enter the setting.

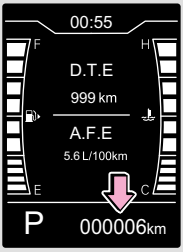


READ

Figures are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Driving Information

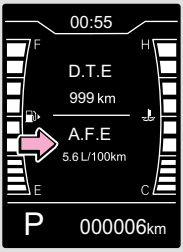
Total mileage



OMT1E-1473

Total mileage: Total mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 999999 km. It remains 999999 km if beyond the range.

Driving mileage/Average fuel consumption



OMT1E-1474

Driving mileage: The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel (unit:km).

Average fuel consumption: The amount of fuel used for mileage (common unit: L/100 km).

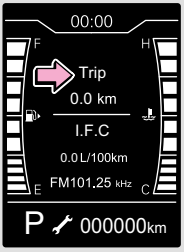
On the conventional screen, average fuel consumption reset can be set as follows:

On driving mileage/average fuel consumption screen, long press right button "0.0/SET" to reset average fuel consumption.

READ

- Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.
- Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

Instantaneous fuel consumption/Trip mileage



OMT1E-1475

Instantaneous fuel consumption:Instantaneous fuel consumption of the vehicle (common unit: L/100 km).

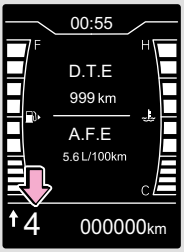
Trip mileage: It is convenient to calculate the mileage for each trip after resetting (unit: km); The display range is 0 to 9999.9 km. It will return to zero and restart calculation if exceed 9999.9 km.

On the conventional screen, trip mileage reset can be set as follows:

On instantaneous fuel consumption/trip mileage screen, long press right button "0.0/SET" to reset trip mileage.

> READ
>
> - After starting the engine and accelerating, the instantaneous fuel consumption is extremely high. It is a normal phenomenon.
> - Instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

Gear position display



OMT1E-1476

Display the currently selected gear position information (in manual mode or the current gear position).

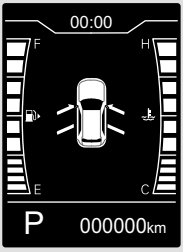
On-board computer displays arrow and target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation:

" ↑ " prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform a downshift operation.

> READ
>
> The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.

Doors status display



OMT1E-1477

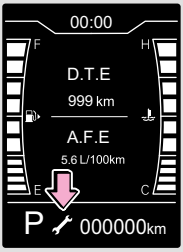
It is used to indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side.

When vehicle speed is ＜ 3 km/h with a door open, the buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door symbol will turn on; when vehicle speed is ≥ 3 km/h, the buzzer will sound and the corresponding door symbol will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

WARNING

Make sure that all doors are closed before driving.

Maintenance reminder



OMT1E-1478

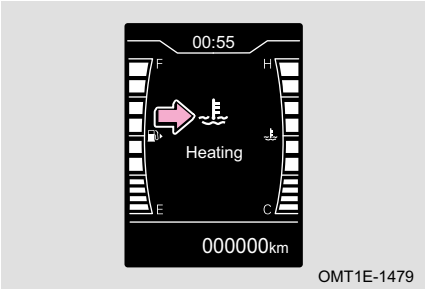
It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage, if it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on. After maintenance mileage is reset, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals, when it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

READ

The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power off.

Engine warming up function

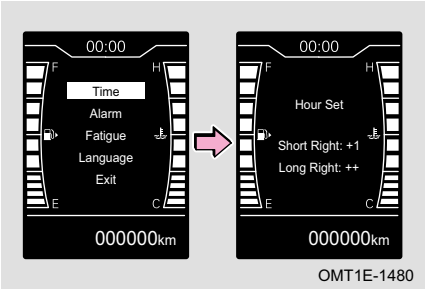


OMT1E-1479

Start engine, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area when engine coolant temperature is low, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently; After engine coolant temperature is increased, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

Setting

Time setting



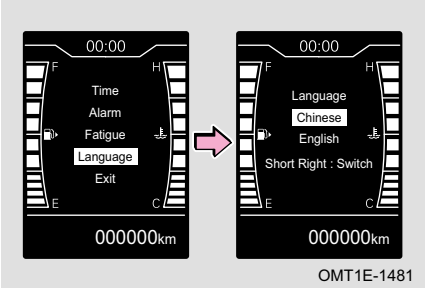
OMT1E-1480

On setting screen, time can be set by operating meter buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch to time setting. Short press right button "0.0/SET" again to enter time setting;

Step 2: Short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch between hour setting and minute setting. Short/Long press right button "0.0/SET" of meter to set the time. It will save by default and exit time setting if there is no operation for 5 seconds/short press left button "⧉/⮌".

Language setting



OMT1E-1481

On setting screen, language can be set by operating meter buttons:

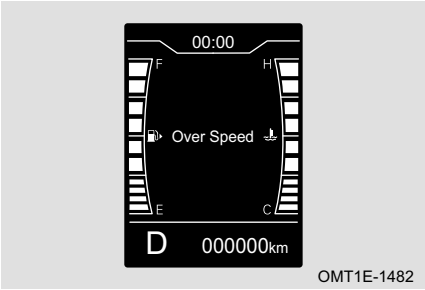
Step 1: On setting screen, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch to language setting. Short press right button "0.0/SET" again to enter language setting;

Step 2: Short press right button "0.0/SET" to switch between Chinese/English. It will save by default and exit language setting if there is no operation for 5 seconds/short press left button "⧉/⮌".

READ

Language adjustment can also be set by audio and entertainment system.

Overspeed alarm (if equipped)

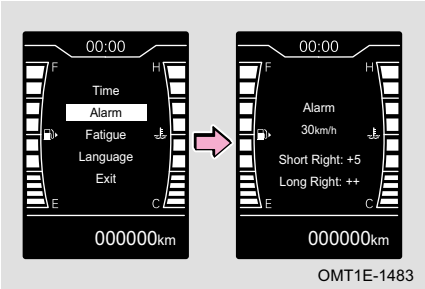


OMT1E-1482

When speed reaches the set value, driving information display screen pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when speed is lower than setting value by 5 km/h. If speed reaches the set value again, it will alarm again.

READ

The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT1E-1483

On setting screen, overspeed alarm can be set by operating meter buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch to overspeed alarm setting. Short press right button "0.0/SET" again to enter overspeed alarm setting;

Step 2: Short press right button "0.0/SET" to set the speed limit for overspeed alarm. It will save by default and exit overspeed alarm setting if there is no operation for 5 seconds/short press left button "⧉/⮌".

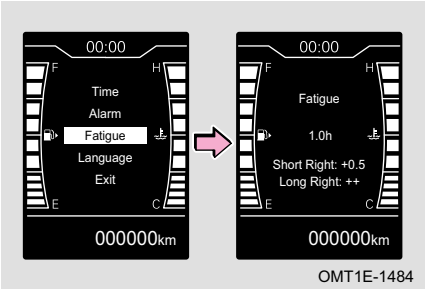
READ

- The speed limit is adjusted by 5 km/h every time.
- The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

Fatigue driving



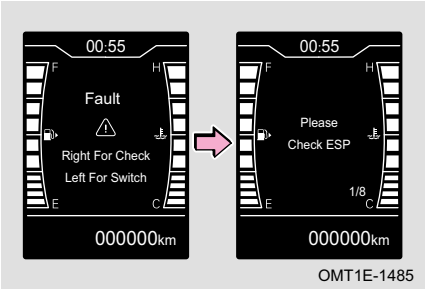
On setting screen, fatigue driving can be set by operating meter buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch to fatigue driving setting. Short press right button "0.0/SET" again to enter fatigue driving setting;

Step 2: Short press right button "0.0/SET" to set the fatigue driving time. It will save by default and exit fatigue driving setting if there is no operation for 5 seconds/ short press left button "⧉/⮌".

READ
The fatigue driving time can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF (system defaults to 1 h for fatigue driving reminder opening time).

Fault information



When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen after switching vehicle power to ON mode.

On the conventional screen, fault information inquiry can be performed as follows:

Step 1: On the conventional screen, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to switch to setting screen. If there is fault, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to enter fault information screen.

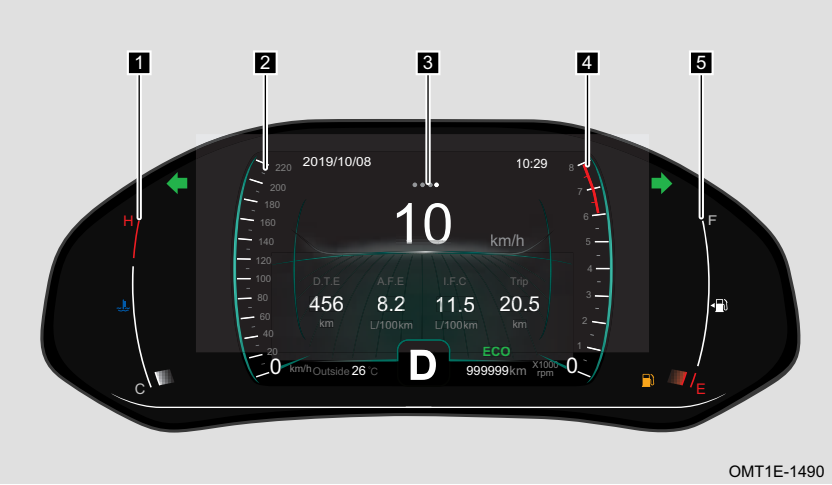
Step 2: Short press right button "0.0/SET" of meter to check the fault information, short press left button "⧉/⮌" of meter to check the next fault information. It will exit fault information inquiry by default if there is no operation for 5 seconds/ short pressing left button "⧉/⮌".

CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-2. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Color)

Instrument Cluster Overview



1 Engine coolant temperature gauge

2 Speedometer

3 Information display area

4 Tachometer

5 Fuel gauge

Speedometer

Speedometer: The current driving speed of vehicle (unit: km/h).

CAUTION

Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (For details, refer to "7-2.Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

Tachometer

Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1000 rpm).

After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range 6000 - 8000 rpm (Red scale on dial). Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

CAUTION

- Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.
- Do not keep engine speed at 6000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

Fuel Gauge

Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel of fuel tank.

When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ

When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turns or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.

Near C or in C area (low temperature range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive.

Near H or in H area (overheating range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

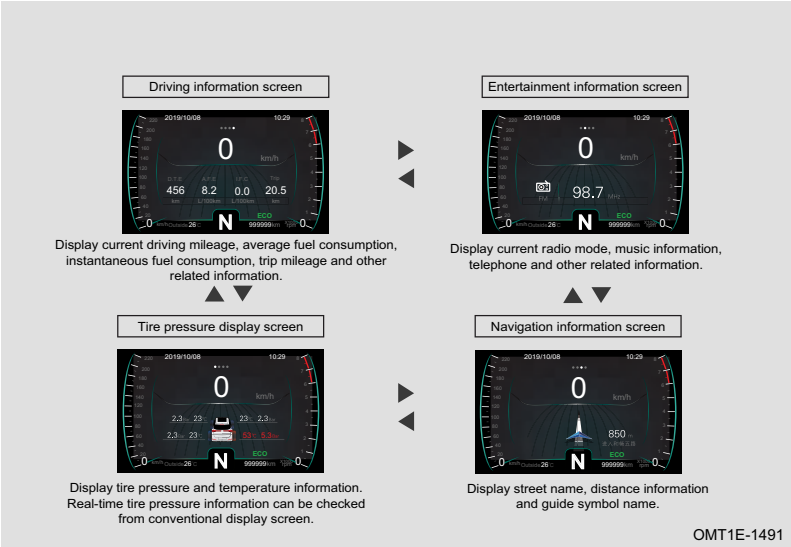
CAUTION

- If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Information Display Area

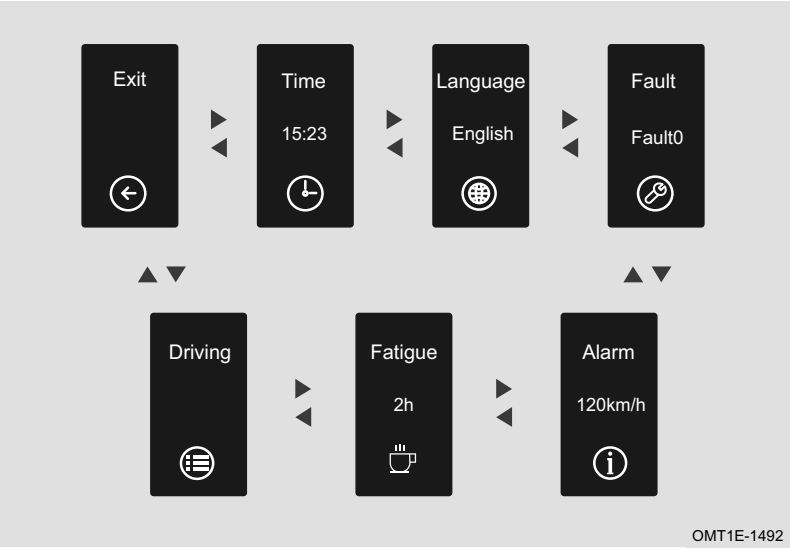
Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to cycle the following screens.



Setting screen

Setting screen includes the following screens, short press OK button " ⊡ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting screen. Press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to setting screen. Short press OK button " ⊡ " of steering wheel combination button again to enter the setting.

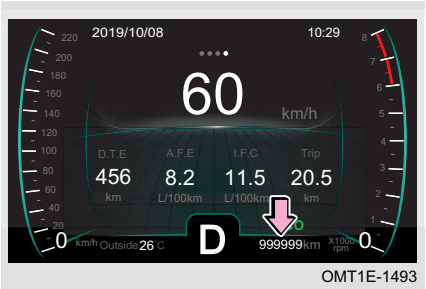


READ

- During calling via Bluetooth, the instrument cluster displays " " icon.
- Figures are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Driving Information

Driving mileage/Instantaneous fuel consumption/Trip mileage



Driving mileage: The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel (common unit: km).

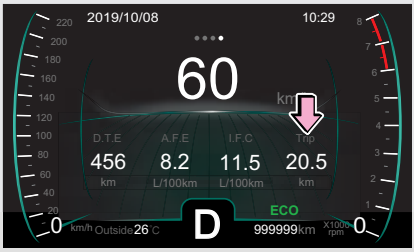
Instantaneous fuel consumption: Instantaneous fuel consumption of the vehicle (common unit: L/100 km).

Total mileage: Total mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 999999 km. It remains 999999 km if beyond the range.

READ

- Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

Trip mileage



OMT1E-1494

Trip mileage: It is convenient to calculate the mileage for each trip after resetting (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 9999.9 km. It will return to zero and restart calculation if it exceeds 9999.9 km.

OMT1E-1495

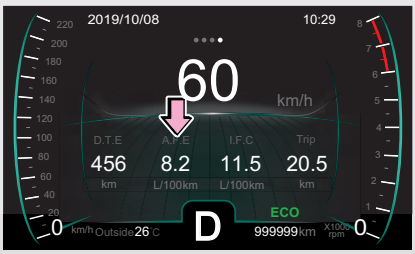
Trip mileage can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: Select driving information, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter trip mileage reset screen;

Step 3: On trip mileage reset screen, long press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

Average fuel consumption



OMT1E-1496

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, the meter displays current value.

READ

Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

OMT1E-1497

Average fuel consumption: The amount of fuel used for mileage (common unit: L/100 km).

Average fuel consumption can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: Select driving information, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter average fuel consumption reset screen;

Step 3: On average fuel consumption reset screen, long press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

ESP function

OMT1E-1498

ESP function can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: Select driving information, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter ESP function screen;

Step 3: On ESP function screen, long press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch between ON/OFF.

READ
For details of ESP function, refer to "5-10. Braking Force Control System".

Gear position display

OMT1E-1499

Display the currently selected gear position information (the current gear position in manual mode).

On-board computer displays arrow and the target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation:

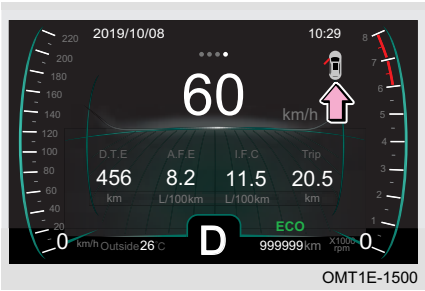
" ↑ " prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform a downshift operation.

READ

The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.

Doors status display



OMT1E-1500

It is used to indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side.

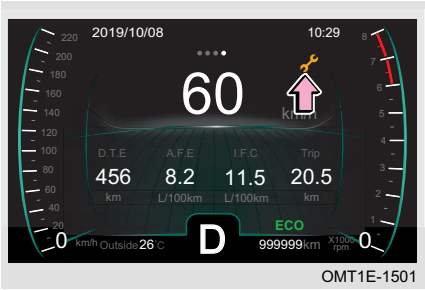
When speed is ＜ 3 km/h with a door open, the buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door symbol will turn on;

When speed is ⩾ 3 km/h, the buzzer will sound and the corresponding door symbol will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

⚠ WARNING

Make sure that all doors are closed before driving.

Maintenance reminder

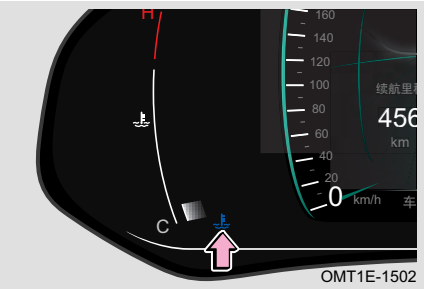


It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage, if it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on. After maintenance mileage is reset, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals, when it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

READ
The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power off.

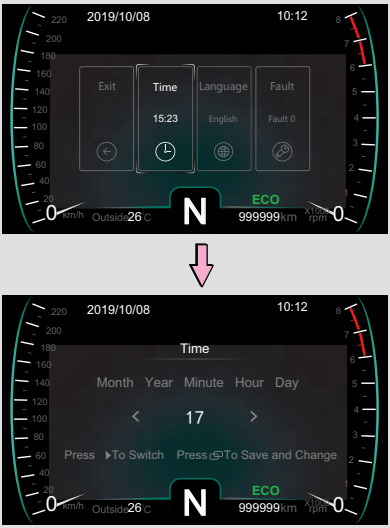
Engine warming up function



Start engine, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue coolant temperature indicator will come on, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently; After engine coolant temperature is increased, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue indicator will go off, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

Setting

Time setting



OMT1E-1503

Time can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to time setting. Short press OK button " ⊡ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter time setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust date and time. Short press OK button " ⊡ " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

READ

Time can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Language setting

OMT1E-1504

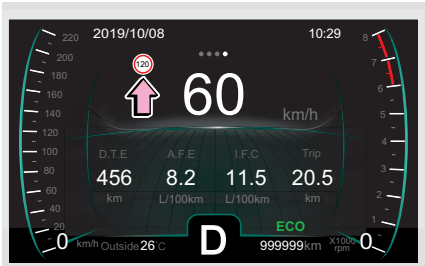
Language can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to language setting. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter language setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch languages between Chinese and English. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

> READ
>
> Language can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

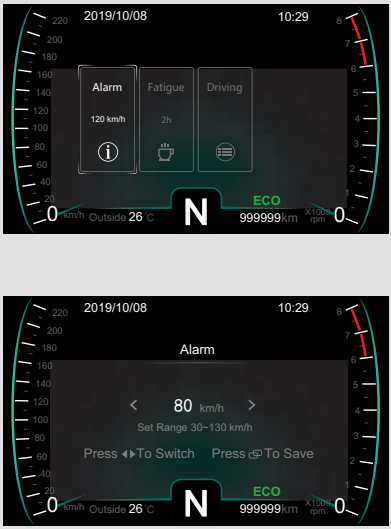
Overspeed alarm (if equipped)



OMT1E-1505

When speed reaches the set value, alarm icon "120" will be displayed on driving information display screen (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon) and alarm buzzer sounds. Alarm icon and sounds will disappear only when speed is lower than setting value by 5 km/h. If speed reaches the set value again, it will alarm again.

> READ
>
> The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT1E-1506

The speed limit can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to overspeed alarm. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter overspeed alarm setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/decrease by 5 km/h on initial data.
Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

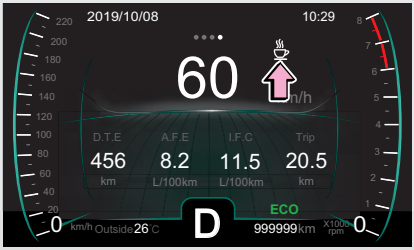
READ

- The speed limit is adjusted by 5 km/h every time.
- The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

Fatigue driving

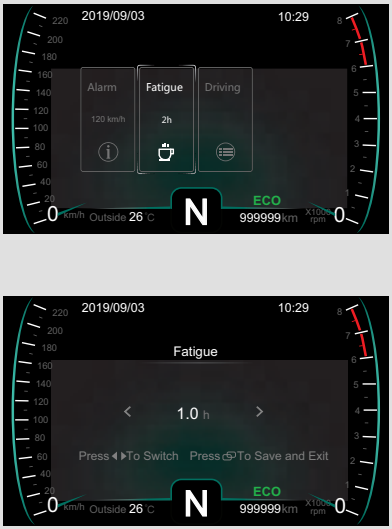


OMT1E-1507

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving time exceeds--h, take a rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 second and fatigue driving icon displays " " to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ

The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT1E-1508

Fatigue driving can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fatigue driving. Short press OK button " ⊡ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fatigue driving setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/decrease by 5 km/h on initial data.
Short press OK button " ⊡ " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

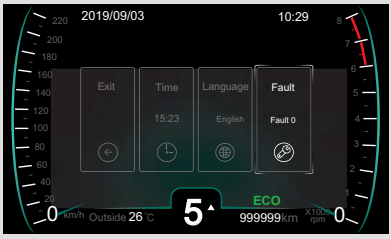
⚠ CAUTION

The fatigue driving time can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF. System defaults to 1 h for fatigue driving reminder opening time.

Fault inquiry

OMT1E-1509

When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen after switching vehicle power to ON mode.



OMT1E-1510

Fault inquiry can be performed by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fault inquiry. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fault inquiry screen;

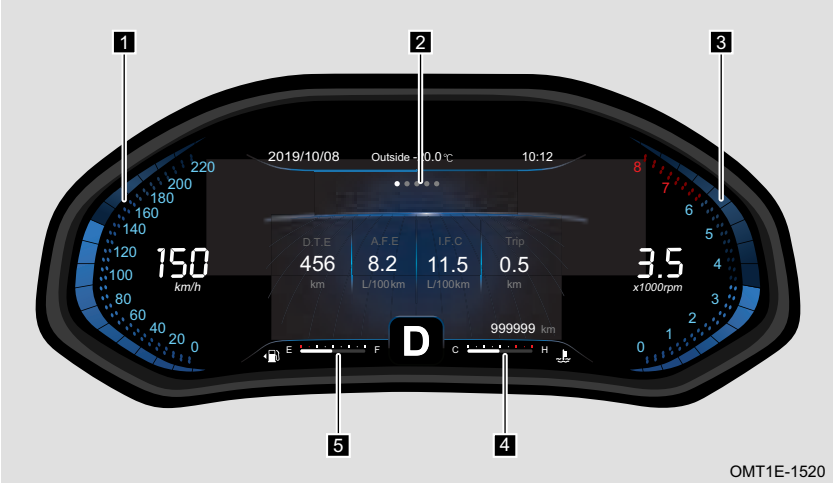
Step 2: If there are multiple pieces of abnormal information in the system, the information will be displayed in the central area of information display area. Operate left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information.

⚠ CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-3. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Composite)

Instrument Cluster Overview



OMT1E-1520

1 Speedometer
2 Information display area
3 Tachometer
4 Engine coolant temperature gauge
5 Fuel gauge

Speedometer

Speedometer: The current driving speed of vehicle (unit: km/h).

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (For details, refer to "7-2.Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

Tachometer

Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1000 rpm).

After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range 6000 - 8000 rpm (Red scale on dial). Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.
> - Do not keep engine speed at 6000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

Fuel Gauge

Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel of fuel tank.

When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

> READ
>
> When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turns or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.

Near C or in C area (low temperature range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive.

Near H or in H area (overheating range)

When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

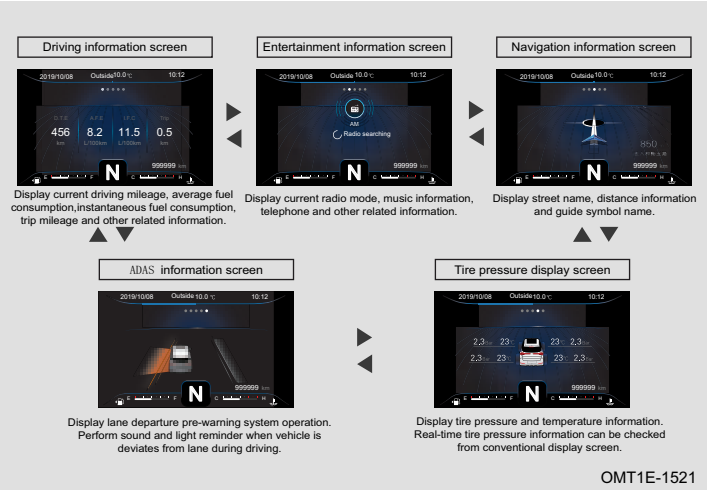
⚠ CAUTION

- If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Information Display Area

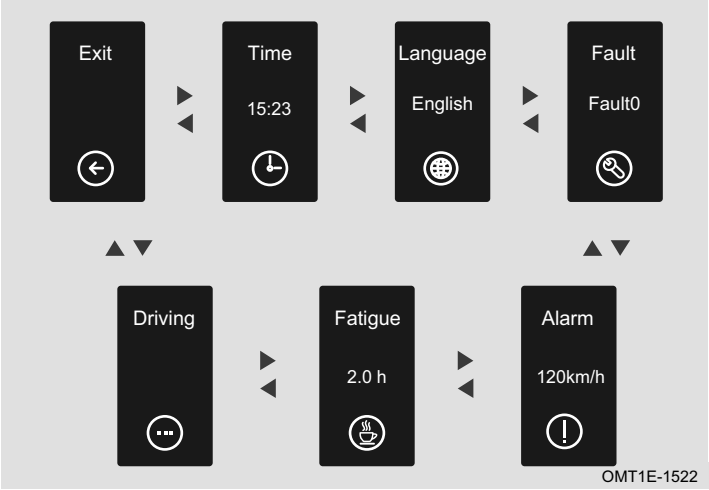
Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to cycle the following screens.



Setting screen

Setting screen includes the following screens, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting screen. Press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to setting screen. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination button again to enter the setting.

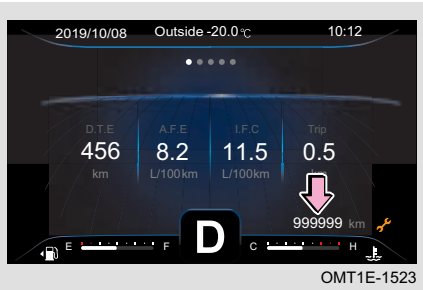


READ

- During calling via Bluetooth, the instrument cluster displays " " icon.
- Figures are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Driving Information

Driving mileage/Instantaneous fuel consumption/Trip mileage



Driving mileage: The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel (common unit: km).

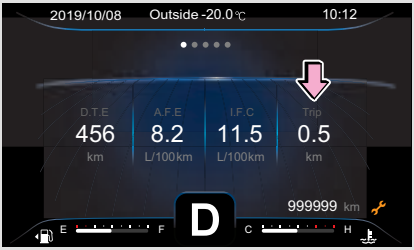
Instantaneous fuel consumption: Instantaneous fuel consumption of the vehicle (common unit: L/100 km).

Total mileage: Total mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 999999 km. It remains 999999 km if beyond the range.

READ

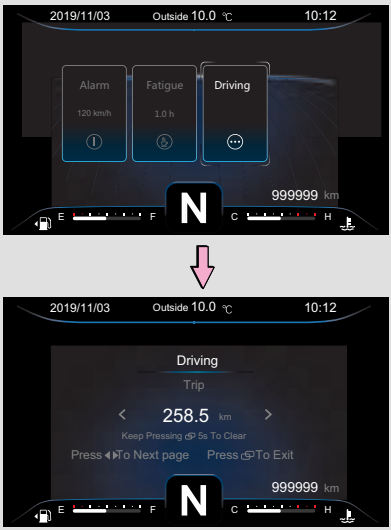
- Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

Trip mileage



OMT1E-1524

Trip mileage: It is convenient to calculate the mileage for each trip after resetting (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 9999.9 km. It will return to zero and restart calculation if exceeds 9999.9 km.



OMT1E-1525

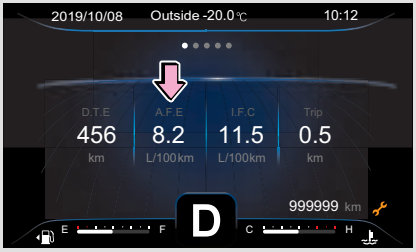
Trip mileage can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: Select driving information, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter trip mileage reset screen;

Step 3: On trip mileage reset screen, long press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

Average fuel consumption



OMT1E-1526

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, the meter displays current value.

> **READ**
>
> Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

OMT1E-1527

Average fuel consumption: The amount of fuel used for mileage (common unit: L/100 km).

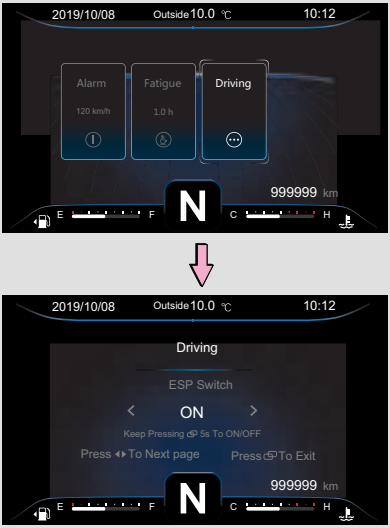
Average fuel consumption can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: Select driving information, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter average fuel consumption reset screen;

Step 3: On average fuel consumption reset screen, long press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

ESP function



OMT1E-1528

ESP function can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: Select driving information, short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter the setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter ESP function screen;

Step 3: On ESP function screen, long press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch between ON/OFF.

> READ
>
> For details of ESP function, refer to "5-10. Braking Force Control System".

Gear position display

OMT1E-1530

Display the currently selected gear position information (the current gear position in manual mode).

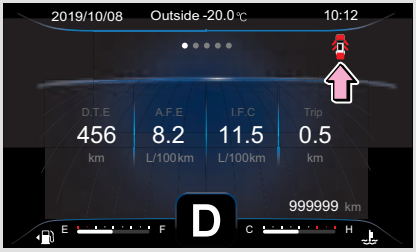
On-board computer display arrow and the target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation:

" ↑ " prompts you to perform an upshift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform a downshift operation.

> READ
>
> The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.

Doors status display



OMT1E-1531

It is used to indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side.

When speed is ＜ 3 km/h with a door open, the buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door symbol will turn on; When speed is ⩾ 3 km/h, the buzzer will sound and the corresponding door symbol will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

WARNING

Make sure that all doors are closed before driving.

Maintenance reminder

OMT1E-1532

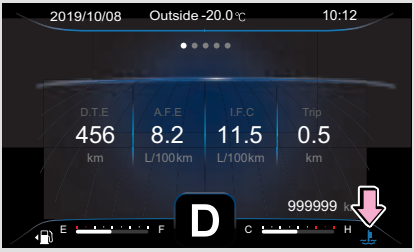
It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage, if it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on. After maintenance mileage is reset, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals, when it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.

READ

The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power off.

Engine warming up function

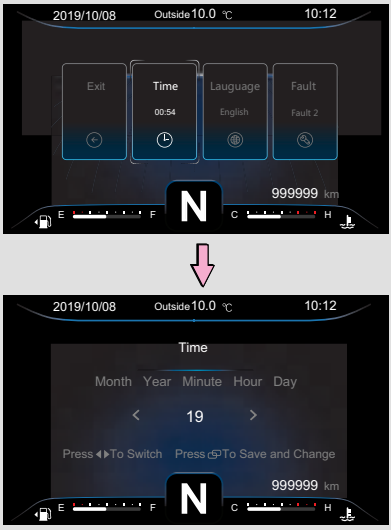


OMT1E-1533

Start engine, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue coolant temperature indicator will come on, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently; After engine coolant temperature is increased, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue indicator will go off, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

Setting

Time setting



OMT1E-1534

Time can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to time setting. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter time setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust date and time. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

READ

Time can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Language setting

OMT1E-1535

Language can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to language setting. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter language setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch languages between Chinese and English. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

> **READ**
>
> Language can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Fault inquiry

OMT1E-1536

When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen after switching vehicle power to ON mode.

OMT1E-1537

Fault inquiry can be performed by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fault inquiry. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fault inquiry screen;

Step 2: If there are multiple pieces of abnormal information in the system, the information will be displayed in the central area of information display area. Operate left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information.

CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

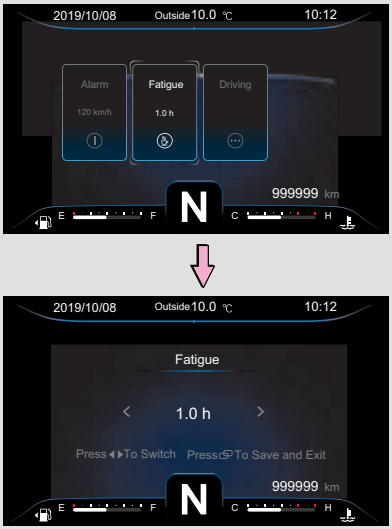
Fatigue driving

OMT1E-1538

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving time exceeds--h, take a rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 second and fatigue driving icon displays " " to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ

The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT1E-1539

Fatigue driving can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

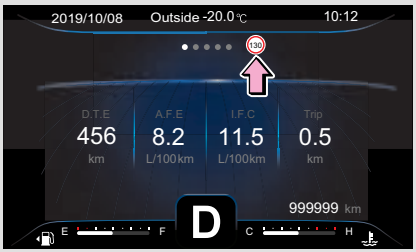
Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fatigue driving. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fatigue driving setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/decrease by 5 km/h on initial data.
Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

CAUTION

The fatigue driving time can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF. System defaults to 1 h for fatigue driving reminder opening time.

Overspeed alarm (if equipped)

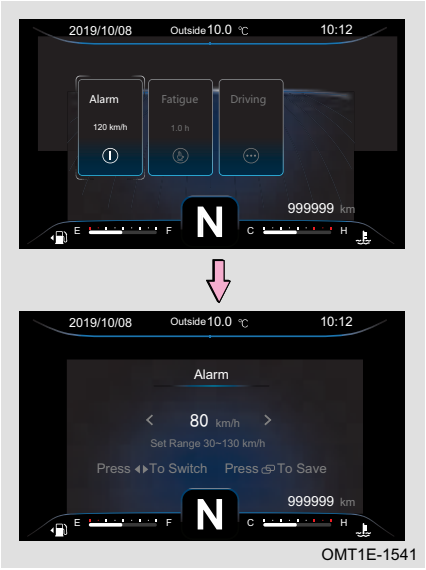


OMT1E-1540

When speed reaches the set value, alarm icon "120" will be displayed on driving information display screen (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon) and alarm buzzer sounds. Alarm icon and sounds will disappear only when speed is lower than setting value by 5 km/h. If speed reaches the set value again, it will alarm again.

READ

- The overspeed alarm function will not available when speed limit assist is turned on.
- The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT1E-1541

The speed limit can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to overspeed alarm. Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter overspeed alarm setting;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to increase/decrease by 5 km/h on initial data.
Short press OK button " " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and exit setting.

READ

- The speed limit is adjusted by 5 km/h every time.
- The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

Non-adjustable overspeed alarm (if equipped)

When the speed reaches the 120 km/h, instrument cluster pops the alarm screen and alarm buzzer sounds. Warning text and sounds will disappear only when the speed is lower than 115 km/h. If the speed reaches 120 km/h again, it will alarm again.

2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)

Instrument Cluster Overview

1 Speedometer
2 Information display area
3 Tachometer
4 Engine coolant temperature gauge
5 Fuel gauge

Speedometer

Speedometer: The current driving speed of vehicle (unit: km/h).

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> Speedometer is affected by tire size used in vehicle. Only tires of original size can be used (For details, refer to "7-2.Vehicle Specifications"), otherwise the speedometer will not indicate the correct speed.

Tachometer

Tachometer: Current engine speed (unit: x1000 rpm).
After break-in period of vehicle, it is allowed to reach the high engine speed range 6000 - 8000 rpm (Red scale on dial). Do not drive vehicle within this range for a long time.

> ⚠ CAUTION
>
> - Do not run engine at high speed during break-in period.
> - Do not keep engine speed at 6000 rpm or more for a long time, or engine may be seriously damaged.

Fuel Gauge

Fuel gauge: Current remaining fuel of fuel tank.
When fuel gauge indication is near E or the low fuel level warning indicator comes on, it indicates that remaining fuel is insufficient. Please add fuel as soon as possible.

READ

When the vehicle is accelerating, sudden braking, sharp turns or driving on a sloping road, the fuel gauge reading might be inaccurate.

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

Engine coolant temperature gauge: Current engine coolant temperature.
Near C or in C area (low temperature range)
When engine coolant temperature gauge is near C or in C area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is low. Within this temperature range, do not run engine at high speed and the engine load should not be excessive.
Near H or in H area (overheating range)
When engine coolant temperature gauge is near H or in H area, it indicates that engine coolant temperature is high. Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

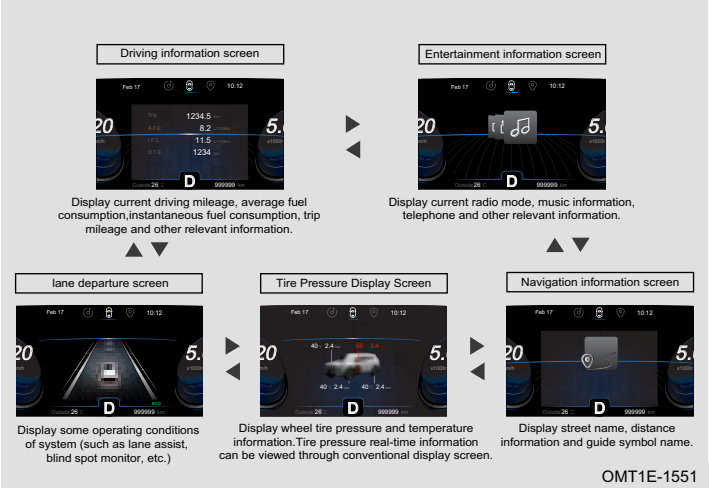
WARNING

- If engine coolant temperature gauge indication remains in low temperature range for a long time, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Never open the coolant reservoir cap if engine coolant temperature gauge indication is in overheating range. Check if coolant level is too low after engine cools down. Never run engine when coolant level is too low, or the engine will be seriously damaged.

Information Display Area

Conventional display screen

Conventional display screen includes the following screens, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to cycle the following screens.



Setting screen

Setting screen includes the following screens, on conventional display screen, dial/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter setting screen. Press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to setting screen. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons again to enter the setting.

READ

Figures are for reference only. Please subject to the actual vehicle.

Driving Information

Driving mileage/Instantaneous fuel consumption/Trip mileage

OMT1E-1553

Driving mileage: The estimated maximum distance that can be driven with current remaining fuel (common unit: km).

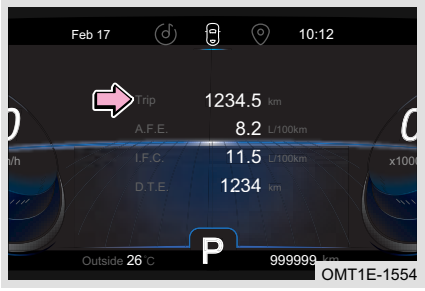
Instantaneous fuel consumption: Instantaneous fuel consumption of the vehicle (common unit: L/100 km).

Total mileage: Total mileage of the vehicle (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 999999 km. It remains 999999 km if beyond the range.

READ

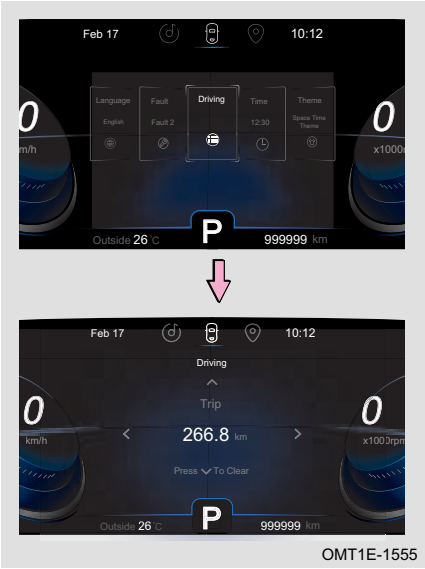
- Driving mileage is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.
- Instantaneous fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

Trip mileage



OMT1E-1554

Trip mileage: It is convenient to calculate the mileage for each trip after resetting (common unit: km); The display range is 0 to 9999.9 km. It will return to zero and restart calculation if it exceeds 9999.9 km.



OMT1E-1555

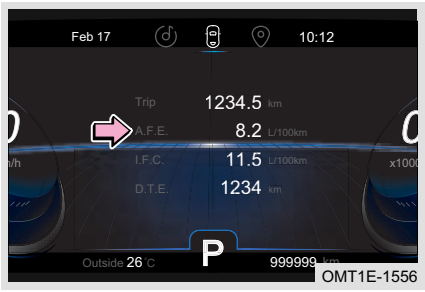
Trip mileage can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select trip mileage screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter trip mileage screen.

Step 3: Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

Average fuel consumption



OMT1E-1556

Display average fuel consumption after engine starts. Before that, the meter displays current value.

READ
Average fuel consumption is calculated by the on-board computer and can only be used as a reference.

OMT1E-1557

Average fuel consumption: The amount of fuel used for mileage (common unit: L/100 km).

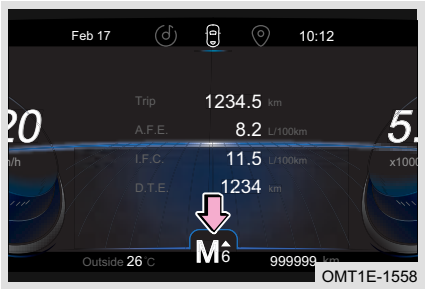
Average fuel consumption can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select average fuel consumption screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter average fuel consumption screen;

Step 3: Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset.

Gear position display



OMT1E-1558

Display the currently selected gear position information (in manual mode or the current gear position).

On-board computer displays arrow and target gear according to current conditions to prompt user to perform a reasonable shift operation:

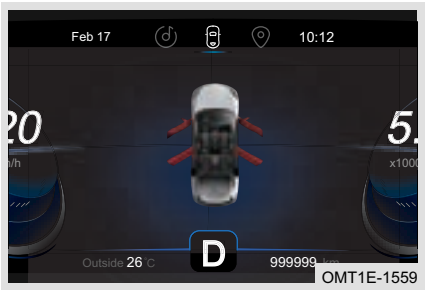
" ↑ " prompts you to perform an up-shift operation.

" ↓ " prompts you to perform a down-shift operation.

READ

The information is for reference only. Always upshift or downshift according to actual situations.

Doors status display



OMT1E-1559

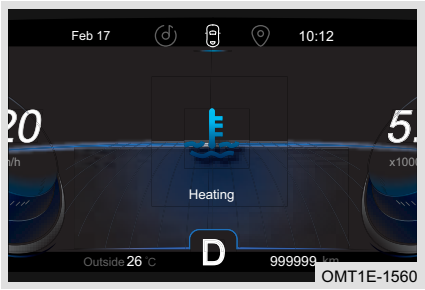
It is used to indicate opening/closing condition of door in any side or hood.

When speed is $<$ 3 km/h with a door open, the audio head unit buzzer will not sound but the corresponding door icon will turn on; When speed is $\geqslant$ 3 km/h, the audio head unit buzzer will sound and the corresponding door icon will flash continuously to inform driver to close it.

WARNING

Make sure that all doors are closed before driving.

Engine warming up function

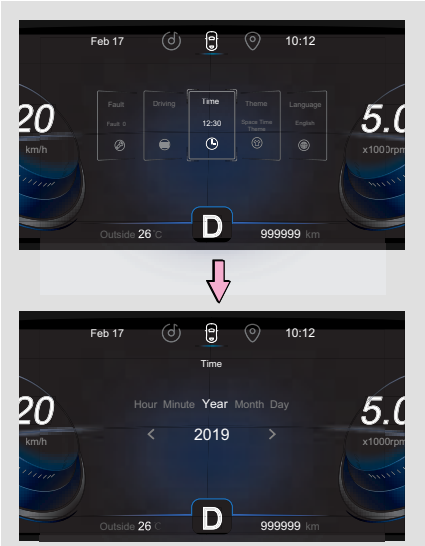


OMT1E-1560

Start engine, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue coolant temperature indicator will come on, it indicates that engine is in warming up status currently; After engine coolant temperature is increased, pictures and text prompts will be displayed on information display area and blue indicator will go off, it indicates that warming up of engine is completed currently.

Setting

Time setting



OMT1E-1561

Time can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to time setting. Dial down/ short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter time setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to adjust date and time. Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ

Time can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Language setting

OMT1E-1562

Language can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to language setting. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter language setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch languages between Chinese and English. Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

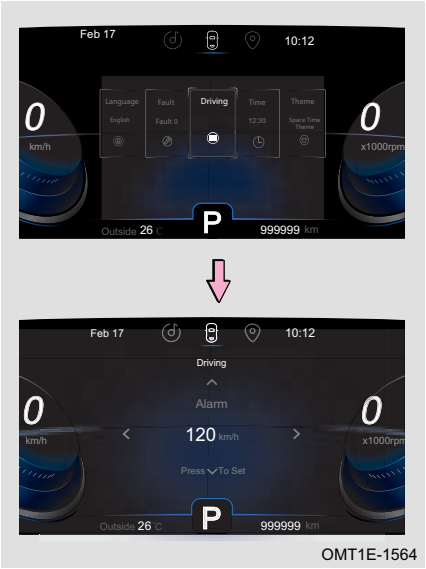
> **READ**
>
> Language can also be set by audio and entertainment system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Overspeed alarm (if equipped)

OMT1E-1563

When speed reaches the set value, alarm icon "120" will be displayed on driving information display screen (specific set speed value will be displayed in the icon) and alarm buzzer sounds, the speed value turns red at the same time. Alarm icon and sounds will disappear only when speed is lower than setting value by 5 km/h. If speed reaches the set value again, it will alarm again.

> **READ**
>
> - The overspeed alarm function will not available when speed limit assist is turned on.
> - The meter buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.



OMT1E-1564

The speed limit can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select overspeed alarm screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter overspeed alarm screen;

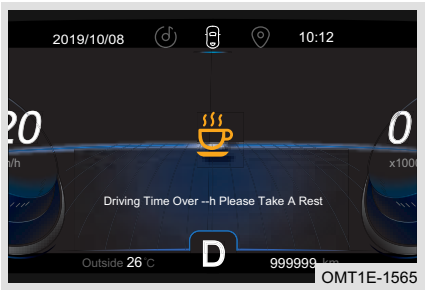
Step 3: Short press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to decrease/increase by 5 km/h on initial data.

Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen;

Step 4: Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn off overspeed alarm. After that, dial up OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn on overspeed alarm and set the speed limit value.

READ
• The speed limit is adjusted by 5 km/h every time. • The speed limit can be set circularly between 30 km/h to 130 km/h and OFF.

Fatigue driving



OMT1E-1565

When driving time exceeds the set time, "Driving time exceeds X, take a rest" will be displayed on information display area, at the same time, alarm sounds for 1 second and fatigue driving icon displays "☕" to inform the driver to take a rest.

READ
The audio head unit buzzer will sound in some alarm conditions.

OMT1E-1566

Fatigue driving can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select fatigue driving screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fatigue driving screen;

Step 3: Short press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to decrease/increase the time by 0.5 h. Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen;

Step 4: Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn off fatigue driving. After that, dial up OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn on fatigue driving and set the fatigue driving time.

READ
The fatigue driving time can be set circularly between 1 h to 4 h and OFF.

ESP function

OMT1E-1567

ESP function can be set by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

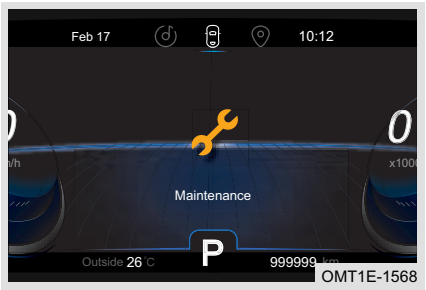
Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select ESP function screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter ESP function screen;

Step 3: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to turn ESP function ON/OFF. Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ
For details of ESP function, refer to "5-10. Braking Force Control System".

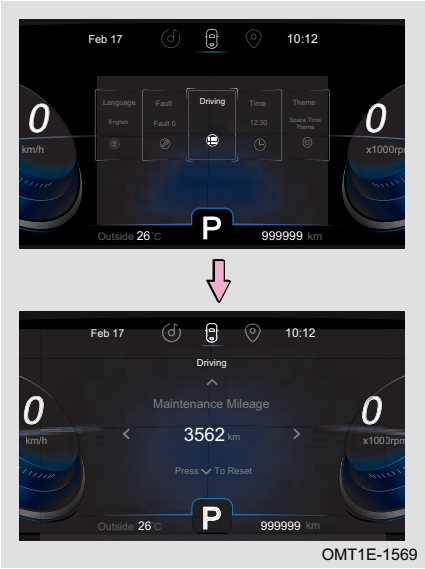
Maintenance mileage



OMT1E-1568

It prompts that vehicle needs to be maintained.

When maintenance is not reset, it compares maintenance mileage with the first maintenance mileage, if it reaches the first maintenance mileage, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on. After maintenance mileage is reset, it compares maintenance mileage with maintenance intervals, when it reaches maintenance interval, maintenance indicator on information display area comes on.



OMT1E-1569

Maintenance mileage can be reset by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

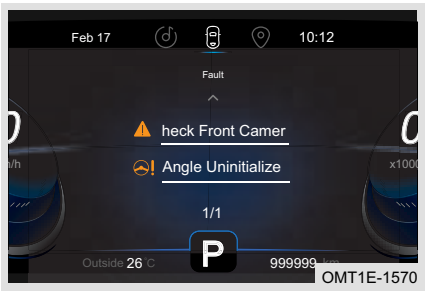
Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to driving information. Dial down/short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter driving information setting screen;

Step 2: Short press left button " ◀ "/ right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to select maintenance mileage screen. Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter maintenance mileage screen;

Step 3: Dial down OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to reset. Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

READ
The maintenance mileage must be reset after each maintenance, and the maintenance mileage will not be lost due to power off.

Fault inquiry



OMT1E-1570

When on-board computer detects that the system is malfunctioning or its information is abnormal, the alarm information will be immediately displayed in information display area one by one and recorded in fault information screen after switching vehicle power to ON mode.

OMT1E-1571

Fault inquiry can be performed by operating steering wheel combination buttons:

Step 1: On setting screen, press left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to switch to fault inquiry. Dial down / short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to enter fault inquiry screen;

Step 2: If there are multiple pieces of abnormal information in the system, the information will be displayed in the information display area. Operate left button " ◀ "/right button " ▶ " of steering wheel combination buttons to check the different abnormal information. Short press OK button " OK " of steering wheel combination buttons to save and return to setting screen.

CAUTION

If an abnormal alarm prompt occurs, please check the vehicle according to the prompt information. If the fault cannot be eliminated, please turn off the engine, and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-5. Instrument Cluster Indicator

Operation/Malfunction Indicator

The operation indicator is used to alert driver the operating condition of a certain vehicle's system and the corresponding operation indicator will come on.

Malfunction indicator is used to alert driver that a certain system of the vehicle is malfunctioning and the corresponding malfunction indicator will come on or flash.

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, some malfunction indicators will come on for a short time, indicating system is performing self-check. If one system malfunction indicator remains on or flashes after starting the engine, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Daytime running indicator		Daytime running indicator comes on when engine is started.
Position indicator		When the position lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.
Turn signal indicator		When the left or right turn signal lights are turned on, the corresponding turn signal indicator flashes. When hazard light switch is turned on, both left and right turn signal indicators will flash simultaneously.
High beam indicator		When the high beam lights are turned on or when the high beam lights flash, the indicator comes on.
Rear fog indicator		When rear fog lights are turned on, the indicator comes on.
Intelligent headlight (IHC) indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's automatic headlights are in operating condition currently.
Intelligent headlight (IHC) malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's automatic headlights is malfunctioning currently. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Front seat belt indicator (If equipped)		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Rear seat belt indicator (if equipped)		This indicator is used to alert the driver that the rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly. Wear seat belt and drive safely.
Brake system Malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that brake fluid level is low or brake system is malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Electric parking brake (EPB) system indicator		This indicator comes on to indicate that the vehicle's EPB is in operating condition currently. The indicator flashes during sudden braking, it is normal and does not need to be dealt with. If it flashes in other cases, it indicates that the system is malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Electric parking brake (EPB) malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that EPB is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Auto hold system (AUTO HOLD) indicator	or	This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle is in auto hold condition currently.
Anti-lock brake (ABS) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that anti-lock brake (ABS) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Hill Descent Control (HDC) system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent control (HDC) system is in operating condition currently.
Hill Descent Control (HDC) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that the vehicle's hill descent control (HDC) system is malfunctioning currently. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
ESP indicator		This indicator flashes to indicate that the vehicle's electronic stability control (ESP) system is in operating condition currently. This indicator comes on to alert the driver that electronic stability control system (ESP) is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

ESP OFF indicator	OFF	When ESP function is turned off, ESP OFF indicator will come on, indicating that electronic stability control system (ESP) is in disabled condition.
Automatic emergency braking system (AEB) indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that automatic emergency braking system (AEB) is in operating condition currently.
Automatic emergency braking (AEB) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that automatic emergency braking (AEB) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Traffic jam assist (TJA) system/ Integrated cruise assist (ICA) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that traffic jam assist system (TJA)/integrated cruise assist (ICA) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane departure warning (LDW) system indicator		This indicator flashes to indicate that the vehicle's lane departure warning (LDW) system is in operating condition currently. This indicator comes on to alert the driver that lane departure warning (LDW) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Lane keeping assist (LKA) system indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that lane keeping assist (LKA) system is in operating condition currently.
Lane keeping assist (LKA) system malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that lane keeping assist (LKA) system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Charging system indicator	- +	This indicator is used to indicate the operating condition of charging system. If this indicator does not come on when vehicle power is turned to ON mode, or comes on after engine starts, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
High coolant temperature warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine coolant temperature is high. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop, turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low fuel level warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that vehicle is running out of fuel. Please add fuel as soon as possible.
Airbag malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that airbag system is malfunctioning. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
Tire pressure malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to indicate that tire pressure is improper. Please check if tire pressure is too low/high or if temperature is too high. If tire pressure is normal, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Electric power steering malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that electric power steering system is malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Low engine oil pressure warning indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine oil pressure is low. Drive vehicle to a safe area and stop. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
EPC malfunction indicator	EPC	This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine is malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Engine malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that engine is malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
Transmission malfunction indicator		This indicator is used to alert the driver that transmission system is malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

2-6. Steering Wheel

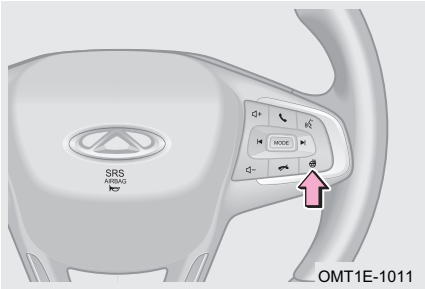
Horn

To sound the horn, press area near horn mark on the steering wheel.

READ

Obey local regulations regarding usage of vehicle horns.

Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped)



Press the switch to enable steering wheel heating function and indicator comes on at the same time. Press the switch again to cancel the function and the indicator turns off.

CAUTION

When the followings are met, the steering wheel heating function can be turned on:

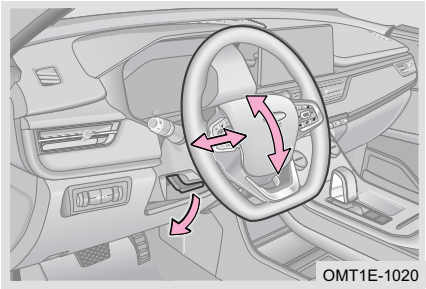
- Engine is operating.
- Voltage of battery is in normal range.
- Steering heated switch is pressed.

CAUTION

When any of the followings are met, the function will turn off after it works for a period of time:

- Engine stops.
- Steering wheel is heated over 25 minutes.
- Steering heated switch is pressed again.
- When temperature of steering wheel is over 52°C, steering wheel heating function turns off; After that, when temperature of steering wheel is below 50°C, the function recovers.

Adjusting Steering Wheel



Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to OFF mode:

Step 1: Push down adjustment lever and release it;

Step 2: Adjust steering wheel upward and downward/forward and backward to a comfortable angle;

Step 3: Hold steering wheel steady and push adjustment lever to original position;

Step 4: Check if the steering wheel is shaking. Repeat operations of step 3 if shaking.

WARNING

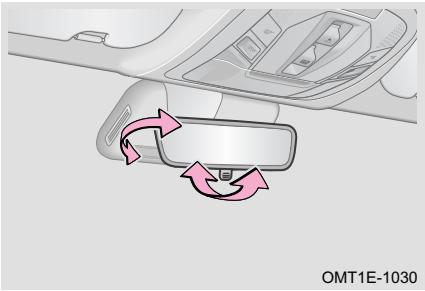
- Make sure the steering wheel is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Do not adjust steering wheel while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

2-7. Rear View Mirror

Inside Rear View Mirror

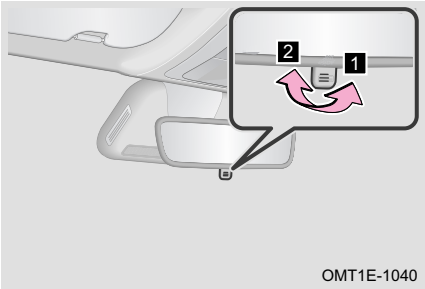
Inside rear view mirror adjustment

■ Adjust the position of rear view mirror


OMT1E-1030

Adjust inside rear view mirror to a proper position before driving, to make sure driver can achieve an optimum view.

■ Manual Inside Rear View Mirror



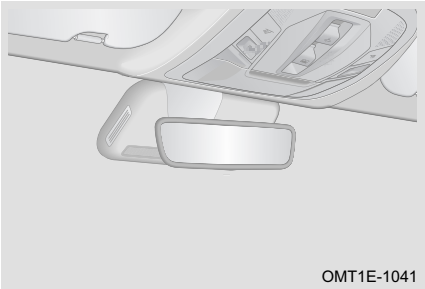
OMT1E-1040

Before driving at night, adjust the inside rear view mirror lever to the anti-glare position, which can reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

1 Normal position

2 Anti-glare position

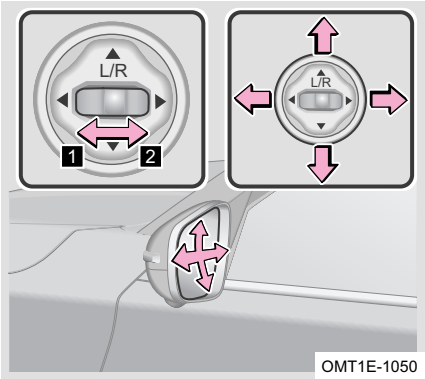
■ Automatic Inside Rear View Mirror (If Equipped)


OMT1E-1041

When driving at night, the light sensor installed in front/rear of the inside rear view mirror automatically detects the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind and automatically adjusts the lens angle to reduce the reflected light from the headlights of vehicles behind.

Outside Rear View Mirror

Outside rear view mirror adjustment



OMT1E-1050

Stop vehicle in a safe place away from traffic, turn vehicle power to ON mode:

1 Move adjustment switch to left to adjust left outside rear view mirror

2 Move adjustment switch to right to adjust right outside rear view mirror

: Adjust outside rear view mirror lens upward

: Adjust outside rear view mirror lens downward

: Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the left

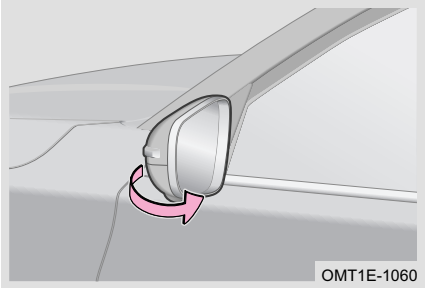
: Adjust outside rear view mirror lens to the right

WARNING

- Image displayed on outside rear view mirror may differ from the actual, so always drive carefully.
- Do not adjust outside rear view mirror while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

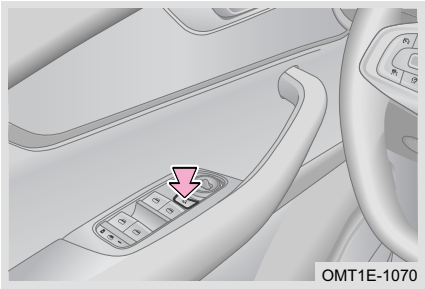
Folding/extending outside rear view mirror

■ Manual outside rear view mirror


OMT1E-1060

Hold the outside rear view mirror, and push it to the backward firmly and slowly (force increases gradually from small to large), until it folds to its position; Hold edge of the outside rear view mirror, and pull forward slightly, until it extends in place.

■ Power outside rear view mirror (if equipped)



Operate using switch: When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, press outside rear view mirror folding switch to fold mirrors automatically, press the switch again to extend mirrors automatically (do not fold manually).

Operate using key: In fortifying/deactivation mode, outside rear view mirror will fold/extend automatically.

READ

- Outside rear view mirror automatic folding needs to be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").
- According to visual field requirements, folding angles of the left and right mirrors are different. Therefore, when outside rear view mirrors are automatically fold, the left and right mirrors are not synchronized, which is normal.

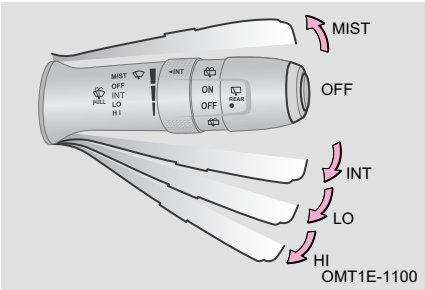
CAUTION

- Do not fold/extend the power outside rear view mirror manually, otherwise it may cause the folding function to fail.
- When folding/extending the outside rear view mirror, do not touch its surface to prevent damage to it with excessive force.
- When vehicle speed is > 10 km/h, the automatic folding function is disabled (do not fold the outside rear view mirror manually while driving), and extending function is available.
- In cold winter, it is recommended to turn off the outside rear view mirror automatic folding function. This can prevent the outside rear view mirror from being frozen in folding position due to accumulated snow or rain.

2-8. Wiper System

Wiper Operation

Wiper combination switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, switch wiper combination switch:

Mist mode "MIST": It will return to its original position automatically once releasing. At this time, wipers will stop after wiping once.

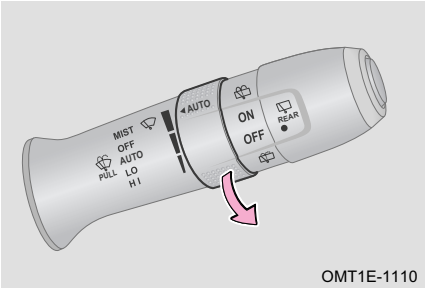
Low speed mode "LO": Operate slowly and continuously.

High speed mode "HI": Operate quickly and continuously.

Stop mode "OFF": Operate automatically at low speed until wiper returns to stop position.

Intermittent mode "INT": Operate intermittently, wiper operates automatically for a cycle at intervals.

To more accurately control sensitivity of wiper, adjust "INT" sensitivity knob. Rotate downward to decrease interval and rotate upward to increase.



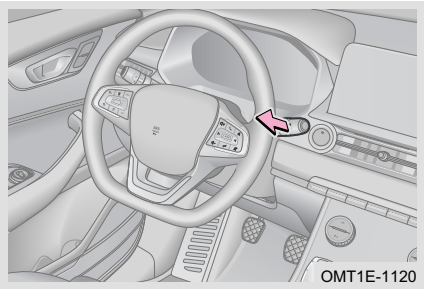
Auto mode "AUTO" (if equipped): Control the wiping speed of the wiper according to amount of rainfall.

To more accurately control wiper sensitivity, adjust "AUTO" sensitivity knob. Rotate downward to decrease sensitivity and rotate upward to increase sensitivity.

CAUTION

- Do not operate wiper when the windshield is dry, as this may damage wiper blade or scratch the windshield.
- Do not operate wipers if there are obstacles on windshield, as this may scratch the windshield and damage wiper motor.
- In cold winter, always check if wiper blade is frozen onto windshield before using wipers. If so, unfrozen it before using, otherwise it may damage wiper blade and wiper motor.

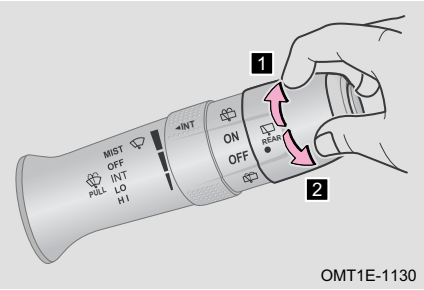
Front wiper operation


OMT1E-1120

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull wiper combination switch towards the steering wheel and hold, the front washer sprays water, and front wiper operates simultaneously. Front washer will stop operating when the switch is released, the wiper will wipe 3 cycles at low speed, and operate one cycle then stop after a few seconds.

> **READ**
>
> When front wiper is operating, shift the shift lever to R, the rear wiper will work automatically.

Rear wiper operation



OMT1E-1130

1. Turn vehicle power to ON mode and turn wiper combination switch " REAR " to "ON" position, rear wiper operates and turns to "OFF" position to turn rear wiper off.
2. Turn vehicle power to ON mode and turn wiper combination switch " REAR " to " " position and hold, rear washer sprays water, and rear wiper operates simultaneously. After releasing, they stop working.

> **CAUTION**
>
- Do not operate wiper combination switch when there is no washer fluid in reservoir.
- When operating wiper combination switch to spray water, do not exceed 10 seconds at a time.
- Do not try to clear a nozzle with a pin or other objects when it becomes blocked, or it will be damaged.
- The antifreeze will corrode the painted surface, so take care to prevent the wrong addition of antifreeze during the addition of the washer fluid.
- Do not mix water with the washer. Water may cause the solution to freeze and damage the washing tank and other parts of the washer system.

Wiper Nozzle Heating Function (If Equipped)

When the followings are met, turn on front wiper nozzle heating function:

- Battery voltage is within the normal range.
- Engine start stop switch is in ON or after engine starts.
- Outside temperature is < 2°C for 5s or more.

After the function is turned on, front wiper nozzle heating function turns off when any of the following conditions are met:

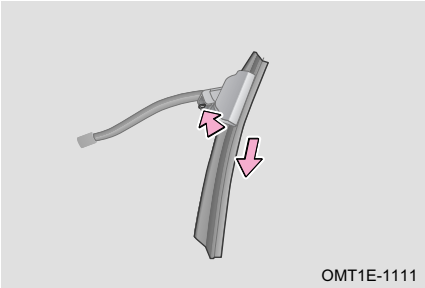
- Engine start stop switch is turned to OFF or ACC.

The function interrupts during the wiper nozzle heating:

- When engine starts, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts, and after engine starts, the heating function will recover automatically.
- When outside temperature is > 4°C for 5s or more, front wiper nozzle heating function interrupts; When outside temperature is < 2°C for ⩾ 5 s or more, the heating function will recover automatically.

Wiper Blade Replacement

Replacing front wiper blades



Step 1: After turning ENGINE START STOP switch to OFF, switch wiper combination switch to Mist mode "MIST" within 3 seconds, it will enter repair mode.

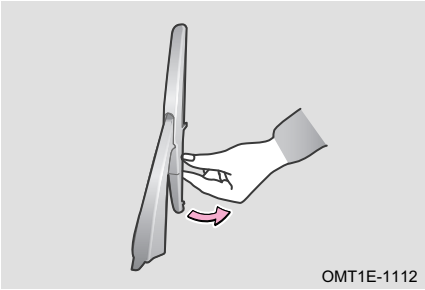
Step 2: Lift the front wiper arm and hold;

Step 3: Pull down wiper blades while pressing the lock button, so as to remove the blades;

Step 4: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and make sure the fixing clamp is locked firmly;

Step 5: Check that front wipers operate properly.

Replacing rear wiper blades



Step 1: Lift the rear wiper arm and hold;

Step 2: Separate the wiper blade by hand as shown in the illustration;

Step 3: Install the new wiper blades in reverse order, and be sure to install them in place;

Step 4: Check that rear wipers operate properly.

READ

It is recommended to go to Chery authorized service station to perform wiper blades replacement by after-sales personnel.

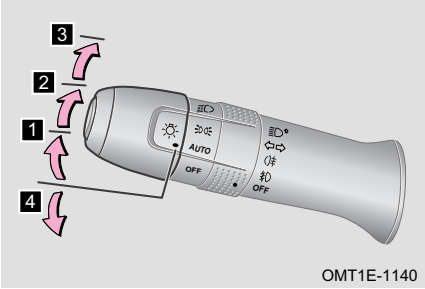
CAUTION

Make sure the wiper arm returns to its original position before driving, otherwise it may damage the vehicle and cause an accident.

2-9. Lighting System

Exterior Lighting

Headlight combination switch



Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn headlight combination switch:

1 Auto-sensing headlight "AUTO": By automatically sensing intensity of external light, turn on/off position lights and low beam lights.

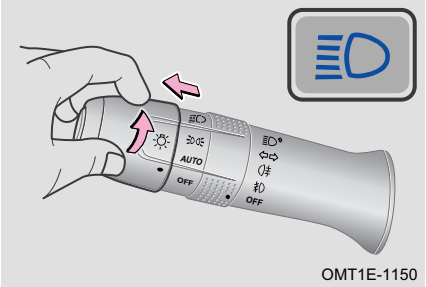
2 Position light "": Turn on front and rear position lights, license plate light, ambient lights and backlights.

3 Low beam lights "": Turn on headlight low beam lights and keep position light come on.

4 OFF "OFF": It is used to turn off headlight.

Headlight high beam

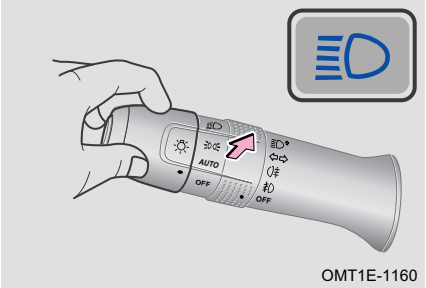
■ High beam light



OMT1E-1150

When turning on low beam light, pull headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release, headlight high beam comes on; Pull headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and release to turn off headlight high beam.

■ High beam flashes



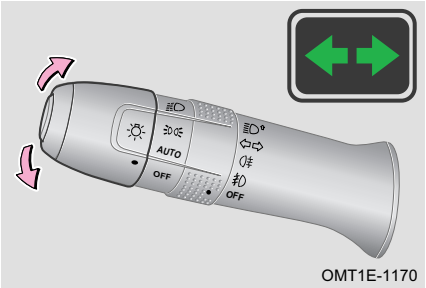
OMT1E-1160

Pull headlight combination switch towards the steering wheel and release it to flash the high beam lights once. At the same time, headlight high beam indicator in instrument cluster flashes once.

READ

- High beam light can flash when the low beam light is off.
- When parking vehicle for a long time or before leaving vehicle, make sure that headlight combination switch is turned off to prevent the battery from discharging. Failure to do so may cause the vehicle cannot be started.

Turn signal light



OMT1E-1170

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, switch headlight combination switch:

Pull up: Right turn signal light comes on.

Pull down: Left turn signal light comes on.

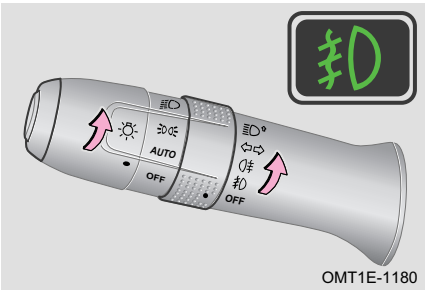
When turn signal lights are turned on, turn signal indicator in instrument cluster flashes. As vehicle is turning back after turning, combination switch automatically returns to center position.

Lane change assist function

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, pull turn signal light switch once but not over steering point, and turn signal light flashes 3 times.

READ
During small angle steering, headlight combination switch may not automatically return to original position.

Front fog lights (if equipped)

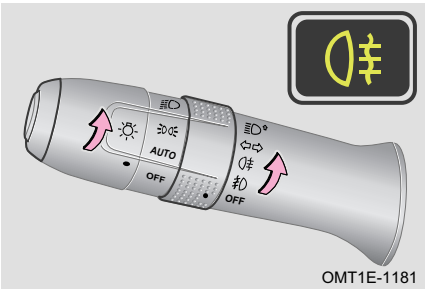


OMT1E-1180

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, when position lights turn on, turn fog light knob to " " position to turn on front fog lights; Turn vehicle power to OFF mode or turn fog light knob to " " position again, front fog lights turn off.

READ
• When turning off position lights, front fog lights turn off at the same time. • Obey local regulations regarding usage of fog lights.

Rear fog light



OMT1E-1181

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, turn headlight combination switch to " " position, turn fog light knob to " " position to turn on rear fog light, turn fog light knob to " " position again or turn vehicle power to OFF mode, rear fog light turns off.

READ
• When turning off headlight low beam, rear fog light turns off at the same time. • Obey local regulations regarding usage of fog lights.

Stop light

Depress the brake pedal, stop light and high mounted stoplight turn on.

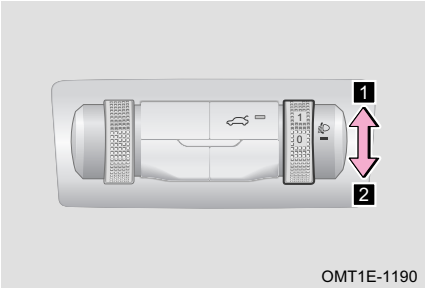
Back-up light

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, shift the shift lever to R, back-up light turns on.

License plate light

Turn vehicle power to ON mode and turn headlight combination switch to "≡DC≡" position to turn on license plate lights. They are used to illuminate license plate in dark.

Headlight leveling adjustment



OMT1E-1190

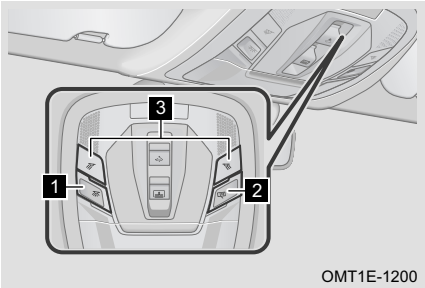
Headlight leveling adjusting switch includes 4 positions (0, 1, 2, 3), and it can be adjusted according to occupant quantity and vehicle load.

When headlight leveling adjusting switch is at 0, the headlight beam is at the highest position.

1. Push the adjusting switch up to raise the level of the headlights
2. Push the adjusting switch down to lower the level of the headlights

Interior Lighting

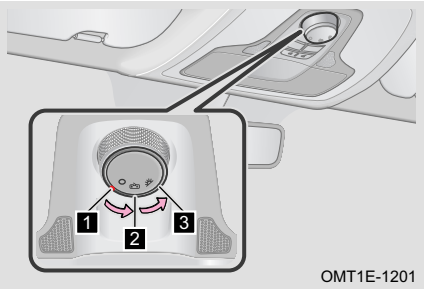
Front dome light (A)



OMT1E-1200

1. Press front dome light switch, front dome light comes on.
2. Press door control switch, if any door is open and remains open, the front dome light, second row dome light come on.
3. Press left/right map light switch to turn left/right map light on.

Front dome light (B)

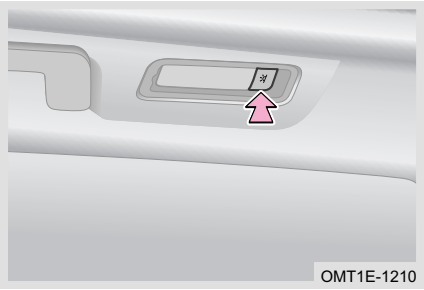


1 Dome light switch: Turn switch to " " position, at door control switch/map position, light will be turned off.

2 Dome light switch: Turn switch to " " position, at door control switch/map position, light will be turned off.

3 Map position: Turn switch to " " to turn light on.

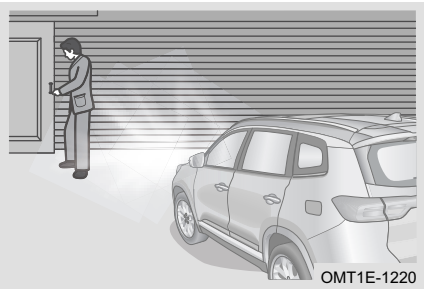
Second row dome light



Press second row dome light switch, the second row dome light comes on, press again to turn it off.

Follow Me Home Function

Manual mode (non-auto sensing headlights)



Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, pull the headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and release, the follow me home function is activated. The low beam lights and position lights will come on. Each time the headlight combination switch is operated, the low beam lights and position lights will turn on for 30 seconds, which can be activated up to 8 times continuously.

Pull the headlight combination switch towards steering wheel side and held for 2 seconds, the follow me home function will be turned off manually; When the set operating time is reached, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically, low beam lights and position lights will turn off immediately.

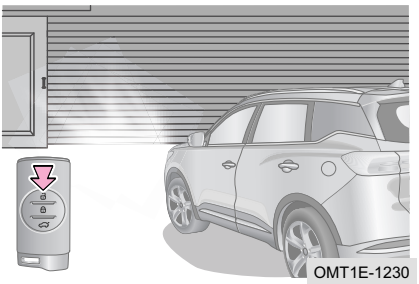
Auto mode (auto-sensing headlights)

Turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press lock button on smart key, the low beam lights and position lights automatically turn on for 30 seconds. Press lock button on smart key to activate again.

When the headlight combination switch is not in "AUTO" position or reaches the set operating time, the follow me home function will be turned off automatically. Low beam lights and position lights will turn off immediately.

Smart Vehicle Locating Function

Manual mode (non-auto sensing headlights)



Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, press unlock button on smart key to activate the smart vehicle locating function. The low beam lights and position lights will turn on for 60 seconds. Press unlock button on smart key again for a delay of 60 seconds.

Auto mode (auto-sensing headlights)

Turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position before stopping. When the vehicle is in a dim environment, press unlock button on smart key, the low beam lights and position lights turn on for 30 seconds.

READ
For non-auto sensing headlights, it is necessary to activate follow me home function before leaving vehicle to enable smart vehicle locating function.

Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped)

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and turn the headlight combination switch to "AUTO" position. When the low beam light is automatically turned on, pull the headlight combination switch away from steering wheel side and release. When the vehicle speed is > 40 km/h, the white indicator "" in instrument cluster comes on, and the intelligent headlight function (IHC) is activated; At this time, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) automatically turns headlight high beam on/off according to road conditions, such as meeting, following, and overtaking.

When the intelligent headlight function (IHC) is activated, the headlight high beam turns on or flashes, the white indicator "" in instrument cluster goes out. Pull the headlight combination switch away from the steering wheel side and release, intelligent headlight function (IHC) is reactivated.

READ

- When the vehicle speed is <30 km/h, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the ambient brightness is too high, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) turns off the headlight high beam automatically.
- When the left/right turn signal light is activated, the intelligent headlight function (IHC) can not turn the headlight high beam on/off automatically.
- Intelligent headlight function (IHC) needs to be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Light Fogging Instructions

When the weather is cold or humid, inner side of lights will fog up due to difference in temperature between the inside and outside of lens. After lights turn on for a period of time, the fog inside the lens will gradually disappear, and there may still be some fog at the edge of the lens. This is normal. This fog has no effect on service life of lighting system. The vehicle lights generate fog, which gradually begins to disappear in the lens of the headlight within 30 minutes after the low and high beam lights are turned on. After a period of lighting, the moisture disappears naturally. This is normal.

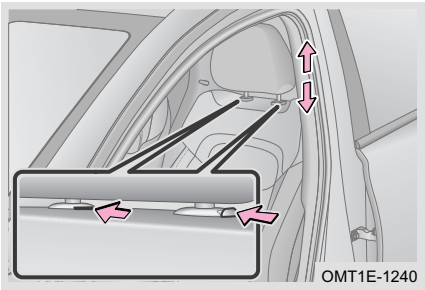
WARNING

- Following vehicle wading requirements (for example:water depth, speed, etc.) when wading, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- After opening light dust cover, reinstall it in place at the end of operation, otherwise water may enter the lights.
- When replacing a bulb, strictly check installation of various light components to make sure that they are installed correctly and sealed properly. When installing rear cover, check its seal ring and keep it clean! Otherwise, it will lead to the serious consequences of water and dust entering lights!
- It is strictly forbidden to flush the engine compartment with a high pressure water gun, in particular, the lights cannot be flushed. Due to high pressure of high pressure water gun, accessories on lights may loose or fall off, vent hole and wire harness connector may damp, resulting in water infiltration or moisture not dispersing for a long time, and even severe condensation.

2-10.Seats

Head Restraints

Front seats



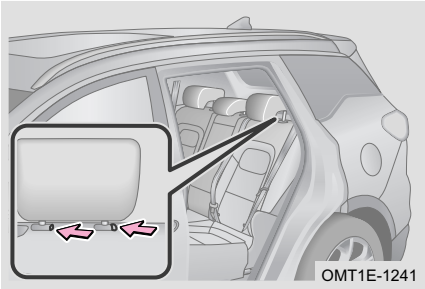
Adjust head restraint upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust head restraint downward: Press the unlock button on the outside of head restraint to unlock, then adjust the head restraint downwards.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 release buttons at the same time until unlocked, then lift the head restraint straight up and pull it out completely.

Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

Rear seats



Adjust head restraint upward: Pull it up directly to a proper height.

Adjust head restraint downward: Press the unlock button on the outside of head restraint to unlock, then adjust the head restraint downwards.

Remove head restraints: Press and hold 2 release buttons at the same time until unlocked, then lift the head restraint straight up and pull it out completely.

Install head restraints: Align the head restraint with the installation holes and push it down to lock position.

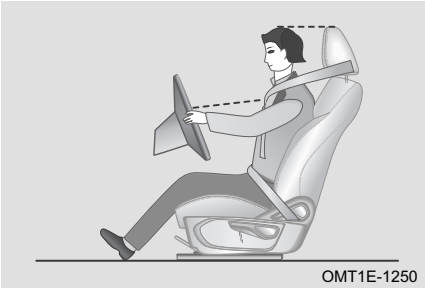
⚠ WARNING

Make sure the head restraint is securely locked before driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.

Front Seats

Correct sitting posture

The seats, head restraints, seat belts and airbags are helpful to protect passengers. Using them adequately will provide you with more protection.


OMT1E-1250

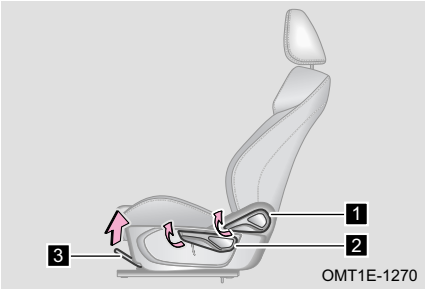
When sitting, slightly incline rearward (25° backward from vertical position is proper) and well back on seatback.

The front seats must not be too close to the instrument panel. The driver should hold the steering wheel with slightly bent arms during driving. His/her feet should also be bent slightly so that he/she can fully depress the pedal. Adjust head restraints properly so that the top of the head restraint is closest to the top of your head.

OMT1E-1260

The shoulder belt should be over the shoulder center and close to the chest, kept away from the neck, the lap belt should be closed to the hips but not stomach.

Adjusting seat manually (If equipped)



OMT1E-1270

1 Seatback angle adjustment

Lean your body against seatback, and then pull seatback adjustment lever upwards. Adjust seatback to desired angle by changing tilting angle of your body. Once desired angle is reached, release the lever. After that, apply force backwards against the seatback to make sure that the seatback is locked properly.

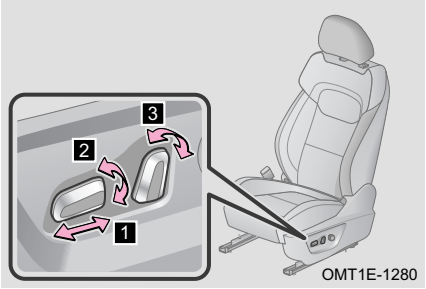
2 Adjusting seat height (only driver side) (if equipped)

Pull up and push down seat adjustment lever to adjust seat height.

3 Adjusting seat position forward and backward

There is a grip under seat for adjusting forward and backward position of seat. Pull the grip up and move the seat back and forth to adjust forward and backward position of seat. After adjusting seat to a desired position, release the grip. Then, move the seat forwards and backwards to make sure that the seat is locked properly.

Adjusting power seat (if equipped)



1 Adjusting seat position forward and backward

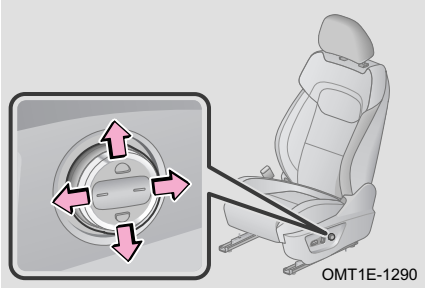
Move button forward and backward in parallel to adjust the seat back and forth.

2 Adjusting seat height (only driver side) (If equipped)

Move rear end of button upward and downward to adjust seat upward and downward.

3 Seatback angle adjustment

Move upper end of button forward and backward to adjust seatback angle.



By continuous or temporary adjustment using lumbar support button, lumbar support function (if equipped) makes driver waist in a comfortable position, solving a series of problems caused by curling waist up in seat.

Long press "⇧" to support upper part of waist and reduce support to lower part of waist.

Long press "⇩" to support lower part of waist and reduce support to upper part of waist.

Long press "⇦" to increase support to overall forward side of waist.

Long press "⇨" to reduce support to overall forward side of waist.

READ
There is a limit position for waist support adjustment. When reaching the limit position, release the adjusting button in time.

CAUTION

Do not place any items under the seat while moving the seat, otherwise, it will damage the seat.

WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Do not recline seatback more than necessary, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger slightly incline backward and well back in their seats while sitting.

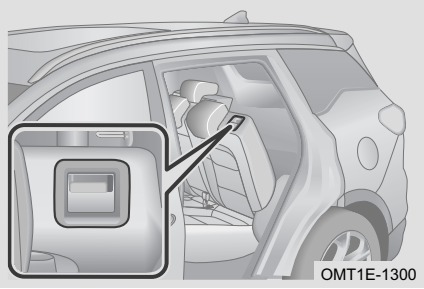
Front seat front and back positions and seatback angle adjustable range (Following data are applicable to power and manual seats):

The total adjustable front and rear stroke is 240 mm; When at design position, it can be adjusted 200 mm forward and 40 mm backward; The driver's seat height can be adjusted to a total stroke of 60 mm; When at design position, it can be adjusted 40 mm upward and 20 mm downward; The seatback design angle is 25°; When at design angle, it can be adjusted 30° forward and 52° backward.

Note: When measuring the seat depth, seats and seatbacks should be adjusted to the original (designed) positions.

Second Row Seats

Folding seatback (the right seat is folded in the same way)



Adjust height of seat head restraints, remove them if necessary and fold up center armrest. Then pull the left seatback adjustment handle forward and pull seatback forward to fold it down slowly. This can enlarge the luggage storage space.

READ

When folding seatback, make sure that outer seat belt passes around the seatback to avoid damaging the belt.

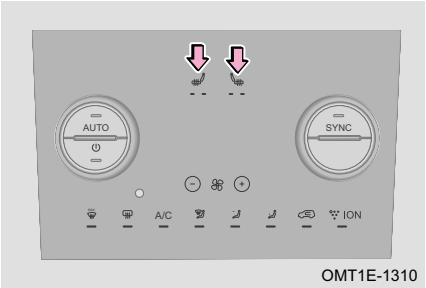
WARNING

- Do not adjust seat while driving, otherwise it may cause accidents and personal injuries.
- Do not recline seatback more than necessary, the seat belts provide maximum protection in a frontal or rear collision when the driver and the front passenger slightly incline backward and well back in their seats while sitting.

The seat front and back positions and seatback angle of the second row seats are not adjustable: the designed angle of the seatback is 25°.

Seat Heating (If Equipped)

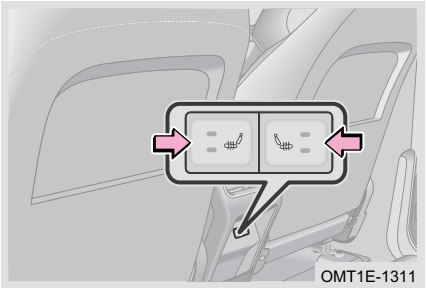
Driver seat heater switch/front passenger seat heater switch



OMT1E-1310

The first pressing is 2-level heating (2 indicators on). Press it again to enable 1- level heating (1 indicator on). Press it the third time to turn off the function.

Rear Seat Heater


OMT1E-1311

The heating function has two levels. When pressing, it works at high level (both upper and lower indicators come on).

Press the switch again to change to low level (lower indicator comes on). Press the button again to cancel heating (both indicators turn off).

2-11.Seat Belts

Seat Belts

We strongly recommend the driver and passengers to wear their seat belts correctly at all times. Failure to do so could increase possibility and severity of injury in case of an accident. Check the seat belt regularly. If any seat belt function failure is found, contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Front seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly (if equipped)

When vehicle speed is < 25 km/h, the red indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes; When vehicle speed is ⩾ 25 km/h, the red indicator "" in instrument cluster flashes, accompanied by sound alarm.

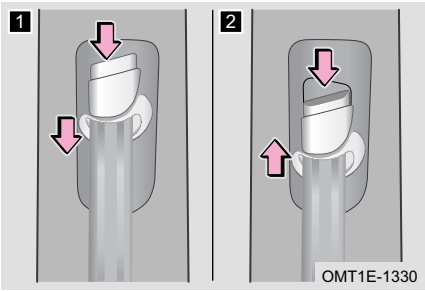
Rear seat belt is not buckled or fastened firmly (if equipped)

(The indicator turns red when the rear seat belt is not fastened, turns green when fastened, and goes off when all fastened)

When vehicle speed is ⩾ 25 km/h, the indicator "" in instrument cluster turns on for 30 seconds and then goes off, accompanied by sound alarm.

Using seat belt correctly

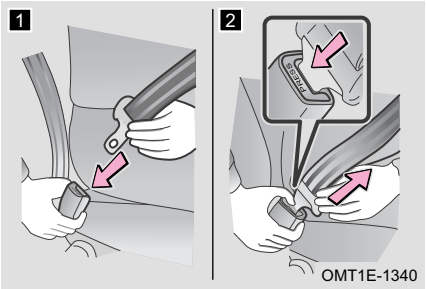
Step 1: Adjust the height of front seat belts;



1 Adjust downward: Push seat belt adjuster downward while pressing adjusting button.

2 Adjust upward: Push seat belt adjuster upward while pressing adjusting button.

Step 2: Fasten/Release seat belt;



1 Fasten seat belt: Push the tab into the buckle until a "click" sound is heard.

2 Release seat belt: Press the release button to retract seat belt. If the belt cannot retract smoothly, pull it out and check for kinks or twists. Make sure that seat belt can retract smoothly.

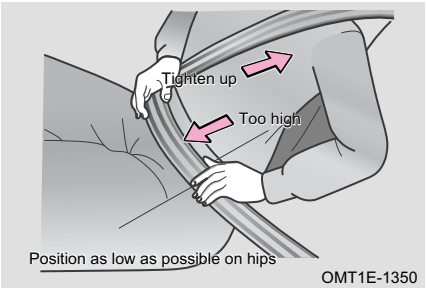
READ

- Each seat belt shall be used by one person only. Do not use a seat belt for more than one person at one time, including children.
- The seat belt will lock when it is pulled out quickly or the vehicle is on a slope, but it will not lock when pulling it out slowly.

CAUTION

- Make sure that seat belt buckle position is correct and is locked safely, otherwise it may cause personal injuries.
- Do not use any seat belt with a loose buckle, otherwise, the seat belt will not protect the passengers in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Step 3: Adjust the position of seat belts.

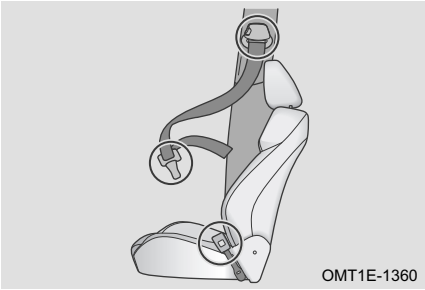


Adjust seatback angle, sit up straightly and well back in the seat. Position the lap belt as low as possible on your hips — not on your waist, then pull the shoulder portion upward so that it comes fully over the shoulder, but does not come into contact with the neck or slide off the shoulder.

CAUTION

- We recommend that children be seated in the rear seat and always use seat belt or appropriate child restraint system.
- Do not wear unfitted clothes while driving to prevent seat belt from contacting with your body closely, otherwise, best protection effect is not achieved.
- Do not recline seat more than necessary to achieve a comfortable ride. Seat belts are most effective when passengers are sitting up straight and well back in their seats.
- Make sure the shoulder belt is positioned across your shoulder. Do not place the shoulder belt under your arm. The belt should be kept away from your neck, but not falling off your shoulder. Failure to do so could reduce the effect of protection in an accident.
- Both high-positioned lap belts and loose-fitting belts could cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Maintaining seat belt



Check seat belts regularly for cuts, fraying, loose and stretched belt (such as after a traffic accident). If the seat belt is damaged, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- Do not allow water to penetrate belt retractor, buckle mechanism.
- Never use chemical detergent, boiling water, bleach or dye to wash the seat belt.
- The seat belt should be washed with mild cleanser or warm water and dry naturally. Never clean it by artificial heat.
- Do not try to repair or lubricate retractor or buckle mechanism of seat belt, or repair seat belt in any way, otherwise, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.

WARNING

- If your vehicle has been involved in a serious accident, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair, even if seat belt is not obviously damaged.
- Ensure that the belt and the tab are locked and the belt is not twisted. If the seat belt does not function properly, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not attempt to install, remove, modify, disassemble or dispose of the seat belts. If there is any need above, have any necessary service carried out by Chery authorized service station.

Seat belt precautions

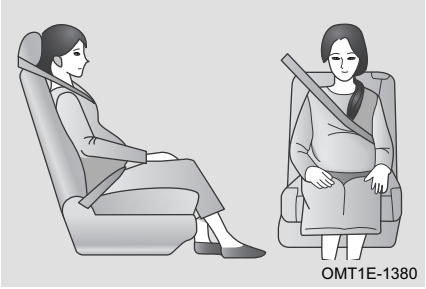
■ Precautions for using seat belt by a child

The seat belts of your vehicle are principally designed for persons of adult size. Use a child restraint system (For details, refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section) appropriate for the child, until the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt. When the child becomes large enough to properly wear the vehicle seat belt, follow the instructions regarding seat belt usage. If a child is too large to use a child restraint system, the child should sit in the rear seat and must be restrained using the vehicle seat belt.

OMT1E-1370

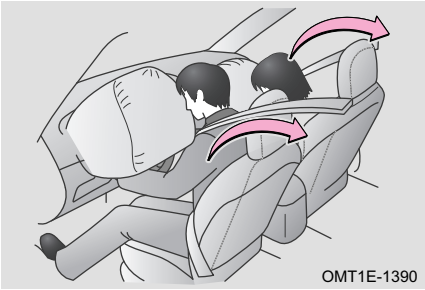
Failure to use a child restraint system (for example: Let a child stand or kneel on seats; Let a child sit on an adult's laps; Holding a child in arms). This may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

■ Precautions for using seat belt by a pregnant woman


OMT1E-1380

Obtain medical advice and wear the seat belt properly. Women who are pregnant should position the lap belt as low as possible over the hips in the same manner as other occupants. Extend the shoulder belt completely over the shoulder and across the chest, avoid belt contact with the rounding of the abdominal area. If the seat belt is not worn properly, it may cause serious injuries or death during a collision or other unintended events.

Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped)



1. Seat belt pretensioner is designed to assist front airbag in the event of a severe impact.
2. In the event of a minor impact or side impact, pretensioner may not activate.
3. During a severe impact, seat belt pretensioner may be activated even if there is no occupant in front seat.
4. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, retractor quickly tightens seat belt to tightly restrain occupant.
5. When seat belt pretensioner is activated, it may make a working sound and release a small amount of non-toxic gas. The gas produced does not cause a fire and is generally harmless.

⚠ WARNING

- When seat belt pretensioner is activated, the airbag malfunction indicator comes on, and seat belts cannot be retracted / pulled out. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- Do not modify, remove, hit, open the seat belt pretensioner assembly, air-bag sensor and assembly wire. Otherwise, it may cause death or serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Functional restrictions

In the following cases, the seat belt pretensioner may not work properly:

1. Modify suspension system.
2. Modify front body section.
3. Repair the seat belt pretensioner or any assembly nearby.
4. Seat belt pretensioner assembly or its surrounding area is damaged.
5. Install grill guard or any other device to front body.

2-12.Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems

According to accident statistics, child sitting in the second row seat and properly restrained is safer than child in front seat. Choose a child restraint system suitable for the vehicle, age and size of the child. (Vehicle seat belt met international standards is designed according to body size of child over 1.5 m. If any under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident).

This instruction only provides installation instructions for child restraint systems (ISOFIX). For installation details, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

WARNING

- Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.
- Child restraint system should comply with the safety standards set by local regulations and laws. For any accident caused by using child restraint system, Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will assume no responsibility.
- For effective protection in accidents and sudden stops, a child must be properly restrained using a seat belt or a appropriate child restraint system installed on the second row seat depending on age and size of the child. Holding a child in the arms cannot replace a child restraint system.

Grade for Child Restraint Systems

Child restraint system should comply with local motor vehicle standards for child restraint system and child safety prevention system (ECE R44), generally, the verified child restraint system is applied a local certification label and also has an orange label after testing by ECE R44 standard. There is information, such as mass group, ISOFIX level and license for child restraint system, on this label.

■ Child restraint systems are divided into the following weight groups:

Weight Groups	Child Weight
Group 0	0 to 10 kg
Group 0+	0 to 13 kg
Group 1	9 to 18 kg
Group 2	15 to 25 kg
Group 3	22 to 36 kg

1. Weight grade 0/0+: It is suitable to use group 0/0+ or group 0/1 for rearward-facing infant seat.
2. Weight grade 1: It is suitable to use group 1 or group 1/2 for child restraint systems with built-in seat belt system.
3. Weight grade 2/3: It is suitable to use group 2 for child restraint systems with back and group 3 for child restraint systems without back.

■ Application type for child restraint systems (Left-hand drive model):

Weight Groups	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Group 0 (0 to 10 kg)	X	U, L	X
Group 0+ (0 to 13 kg)	X	U, L	X
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	X	U, L	X
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)	X	UF, L	X
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)	X	UF, L	X

■ Application type for child restraint systems (Right-hand drive model):

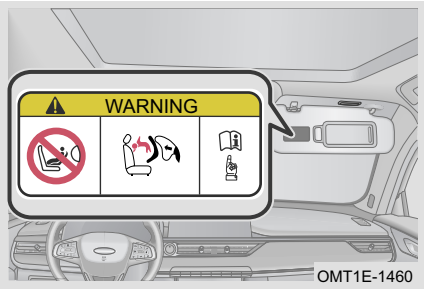
Weight Groups	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Group 0 (0 to 10 kg)	X	L	X
Group 0+ (0 to 13 kg)	X	L	X
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	X	L	X
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)	X	UF, L	X
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)	X	UF, L	X

1. X: It is not suitable for installing any child restraint system in this weight grade.
2. U: It is suitable for child restraint systems of "universal" class obtained the relevant certification in this weight grade.
3. UF: It is suitable for forward-facing child restraint systems of "universal" class obtained the relevant certification in this weight grade.

4. L: It is suitable for child restraint systems of "semi-universal" class obtained the relevant certification if the vehicle is listed on the applicable model list of child restraint system manufacturer.

Note: Child restraint systems of "universal" class: It is installed with seat belt for adult; Child restraint systems of "semi-universal" class: It is installed by with ISOFIX fixing point and TOP TETHER upper fixing point.

Child Restraint System Precautions



This sticker is attached to front passenger sun visor and used to remind you that the vehicle is equipped with front airbag (SRS). Observe the following precautions:

1. Never install rearward-facing child restraint system in seat protected by front airbag (SRS) (active state).
2. Never change the design of child restraint system fixing device or seat belt on the vehicle under any circumstances.
3. Never fix child restraint system with seat belt only. Always use standard fixing device for child restraint system on the second row seat.

If you violate the above three precautions, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.

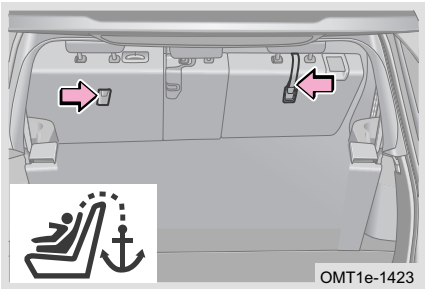
Recommended Child Restraint Systems

1. Please purchase and use child restraint systems approved by ECE R44. Orange ECE R44 certification sticker is generally attached on child restraint systems.
2. When using child restraint systems, please carefully read the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer and strictly follow the installation instructions described in the instructions, confirm that child restraint system is installed firmly and steadily.
3. Child restraint systems recommended from the following table can be purchased and used.

Weight Groups	Manufacturer	Model
Group 0 (0 to 10 kg)	Maxi Cosi	Cabriofix + Family Fix
Group 0+ (0 to 13 kg)	Maxi Cosi	Cabriofix + Family Fix
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	Britax Römer	Britax DUO PLUS

TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point

SUV and hatchback model



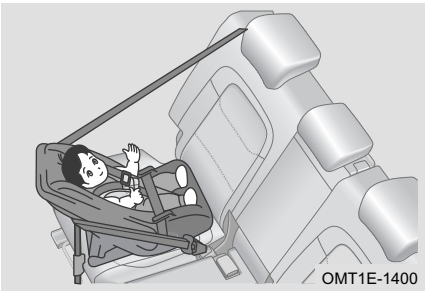
This model is equipped with specific upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) for forward-facing child restraint systems, and these upper fixing points are located on the back of rear seats.

Before using, remove head restraint where child restraint system should be installed, and then hang the hook on child restraint system into upper fixing point, be carefully to avoid strap on hook directly striding or bypassing head restraint, and head restraint and strap should not interfere with each other. Always fasten strap after hook is hung into upper fixing point. For details about fixing and fastening child restraint system upper strap, refer to instruction manual provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

WARNING

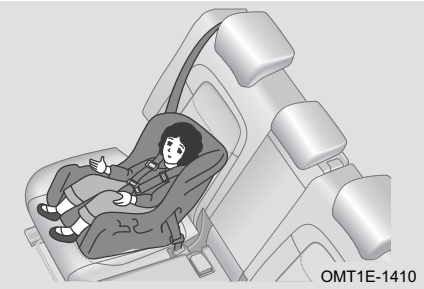
- Do not allow upper strap to stride or bypass head restraint and always fasten strap after installing, incorrect installation may cause serious injury to child.
- SUV and hatchback model: For vehicle with luggage cover on luggage compartment, remove luggage cover before child restraint system is fixed on fixing point.

Rearward-facing child restraint system



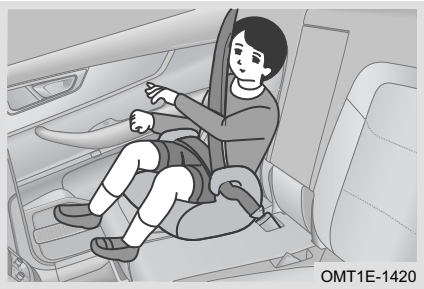
The Rearward-facing child restraint system should be installed facing direction opposite to that of vehicle traveling. In an accident, if an infant faces front windshield, it is likely to hurt his / her vulnerable central spine and spinal cord. Facing vehicle rear, infant's head, neck and torso can be protected by the seat. It is recommended for group 0: Up to 10 kg; Group 0+: Up to 13 kg.

■ Forward-facing child restraint system



The forward-facing child restraint system should be installed facing vehicle traveling direction. It is recommended for group I: 9 - 18 kg.

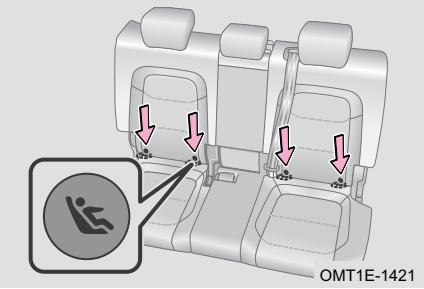
■ Heightening child restraint system



For the expandability of child restraint system function, a separate booster cushion can be used. When the child is shorter and lighter, a booster cushion can be used to increase the child's line of sight in vehicle and secure child properly. (Vehicle seat belt meeting international standards is designed according to body size of person over 1.5 m. If any one under 1.5 m uses seat belt, the belt could hurt his/her neck seriously in case of an accident). It is recommended for Group II: 15 to 25 kg; It is recommended for Group III: 22 to 36 kg.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

Child Restraint Systems



For left-hand drive model, i-Size/ISOFIX fixing points are installation systems for child restraint systems based on ECE R14 and ECE R145 standards; i-Size/ISOFIX fixing points are located under the second row outside seat back; The fixing point position is usually near the mark "⊘"or "" of lower part of seat back.

For right-hand drive model, i-Size/ISOFIX fixing points are installation systems for child restraint systems based on ECE R14 standards; i-Size/ISOFIX fixing points are located under the second row outside seat back; The fixing point position is usually near the mark " " of lower part of seat back.

■ Size class for child restraint systems (ISOFIX):

Use a child restraint system with size class suitable for ISOFIX interface to help user choose the correct type of child restraint systems.

Size Class	Description
A	Full-size, forward-facing child restraint systems
B	Smaller size, forward-facing child restraint systems
B1	Smaller size, forward-facing child restraint systems
C	Full-size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
D	Smaller size, rearward-facing child restraint systems
E	Rearward-facing infant seat
F	Left side transverse infant seat
G	Right side transverse infant seat

■ Application type for child restraint systems (ISOFIX) (Left-hand drive model):

Weight Groups	Size Class	Fixing Device	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Group 0 (Up to 10 kg)	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
Group 0+ (Up to 13 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X

Weight Groups	Size Class	Fixing Device	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)		(1)			
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)		(1)			

■ Application type for child restraint systems (ISOFIX) (Right-hand drive model):

Weight Groups	Size Class	Fixing Device	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Portable Bed	F	ISO/L1	X	X	X
	G	ISO/L2	X	X	X
		(1)			
Group 0 (Up to 10 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
		(1)			
Group 0+ (Up to 13 kg)	E	ISO/R1	X	IL	X
	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
		(1)			
Group 1 (9 to 18 kg)	D	ISO/R2	X	IL	X
	C	ISO/R3	X	IL	X
	B	ISO/F2	X	IL, IUF	X
	B1	ISO/F2X	X	IL, IUF	X
	A	ISO/F3	X	IL, IUF	X
		(1)			
Group 2 (15 to 25 kg)		(1)			
Group 3 (22 to 36 kg)		(1)			

1. X: ISOFIX position is not suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of

this weight group or this size classification.

2. IL: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of special class in the list. These restraint systems may be special vehicle class, restricted class or semi-universal class.
3. IUF: It is suitable for the ISOFIX child restraint system of forward-facing universal class approved by this weight group.
4. (1): Child restraint system without ISO/XX size identification (A to G). For suitable weight groups, please check the model list of ISOFIX child restraint system.

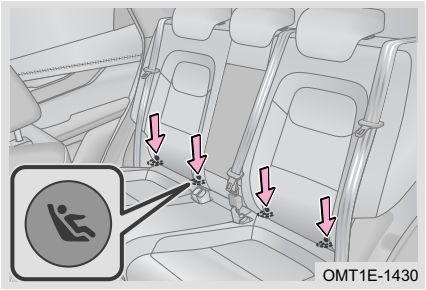
■ Application type for child restraint systems (i-Size) (Left-hand drive model):

Child Restraint System Types	Front Passenger Seat	Second Row Outside Seat	Second Row Center Seat
Child restraint systems (i-Size)	X	i-U	X

i-U: It is suitable for "universal" forward-facing and rearward-facing child restraint systems (i-Size).

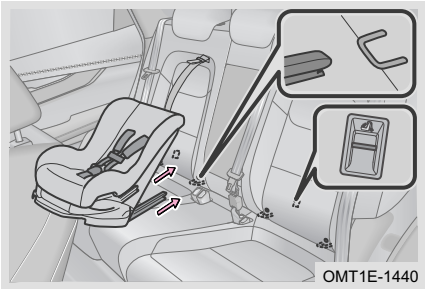
X: It is not suitable for "universal" child restraint systems.

Installing Child Restraint Systems

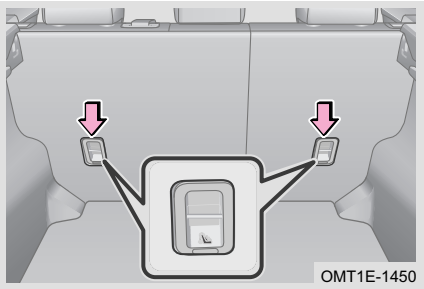


Step 1: Find the lower retaining ring used to secure child restraint system;

Step 2: Put child restraint system on the second row seat;



Step 3: Insert and secure lower hook of child restraint system to lower retaining ring;



Step 4: Pull out the child restraint system upper belt and secure it to upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) dedicated for forward-facing child restraint system (as shown in figure).

Note: Confirm if it needs to be secure to upper fixing point (TOP TETHER) according to the type of purchased child restraint system.

READ

- Please remove the head restraint where child restraint system needs to be installed before using, and then hang the hook on child restraint system into fixing point to avoid the strap of hook directly crossing the upper part of head restraint or passing the head restraint. The head restraint and strap should not interfere with each other.
- After the hook on upper strap is hung into the fixing point, be sure to tighten the strap and not loosen; For the specific method of fixing and tightening upper strap of child restraint system, strictly follow the instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer.

WARNING

- After installing a child restraint system, never adjust the seat.
- Child restraint system must be installed on the second row seat.
- Never fix more than one child restraint system on a set of retaining rings.
- Do not allow the upper strap to cross or pass the head restraint and be sure to tighten the strap after installing. Incorrect installation may cause serious injury to children.
- For the vehicle equipped with a luggage cover on the luggage compartment, the luggage cover must be removed before installing child restraint system to fixing point.
- If retaining ring device is damaged or overloaded during an accident, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
- If the driver's seat interferes with the correct installation of the child restraint system, install the child restraint system on the right rear seat.
- Do not use child restraint system anchor bracket to secure items other than child restraint system. Otherwise, the Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. will not be responsible for any problem caused thereby.
- If the child restraint system is not correctly fixed in place, the child or passengers may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- Make sure the top strap is securely latched, and check if the child restraint system is secured by pushing and pulling it in different directions. Follow the installation instructions provided by the child restraint system manufacturer. If the child restraint system is not correctly installed, the child may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- If the child restraint system interferes with locking device of front seat, do not install child restraint system in the second row seat; The child and front passenger may be seriously injured or even death during a collision or other unintended events.
- Do not allow child to play with the child restraint system lock function belt. Avoid a belt twisting around a child's neck, it may not be released, leading to chocking, other serious injuries or even death. If this occurs and the buckle cannot be released, scissors should be used to cut the belt.
- When the child restraint system is not in use, it should also be fixed properly on the seat; Do not place unfixed child restraint system in the passenger cabin.
- If it is necessary to remove child restraint system, take it out after removing or store it properly in luggage compartment. Otherwise, it may cause serious injuries during a collision or other unintended events.

Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped)

When the driver leaves vehicle and accidentally forgets the children in vehicle rear seat, the instrument cluster will remind driver to check rear seats while getting off the vehicle, when any of following two trigger conditions is met:

1. Before driving, rear door was opened after vehicle is powered on.
2. Before driving, rear door was opened within 10 min before vehicle is powered on and engine is started.

When any of above trigger conditions is met, after driving ends, the vehicle is stopped and the engine is turned off, the text reminder of "Check Rear Seats" will be displayed on instrument cluster and a prompt sound will be heard for 1 s.

INTERIOR FUNCTION

3-1. Key Information

Smart Key 116
Effective Range 119
Anti-Theft System 121
Keyless Entry 122
Vehicle Fortifying 123
Smart Key Vehicle Locating Function 125
Remote start (if equipped) 125

3-2. Doors

Doors Lock Switch 125
Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle 126
Door Mechanical Switch 126
Child-Protection Lock 127

3-3. Windows

Power Windows 128
Window Remote Control Function 130
Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped) 131

3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (A) 132
Panoramic Moon Roof (B) 134
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 135
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 135

3-5. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging 136

3-6. Audio and Entertainment System

Audio Control Panel (No disc DVD) 138
Audio Control Panel (Inter-vehicle Head Unit) 139
Audio Operation 140
Audio Setting 142
Audio Button 143
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 144
Phone-link 144

3-7. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning System 151
Automatic Air Conditioning System 155
Mode Adjustment 160
Air Outlets Airflow Control 161
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation 162
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 164
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 164
One-button Purification Function (If Equipped) 165
Anion Function (If Equipped) 166
Front - Windshield Heating (If Equipped) 166
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped) 166
Interior Active Ventilation and Automatic Cleaning (If Equipped) 167
Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling / Warming Function (If Equipped) 167

3-8. Storage Space

Storage Space 168

3-9. Power Outlet

Power Outlet 171
USB Port 172

3-10. Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 173

3-11. Hood

Hood 173

3-12. Back Door

Back Door 174
Power Back Door (If Equipped) 175
Back Door Emergency Opening 178

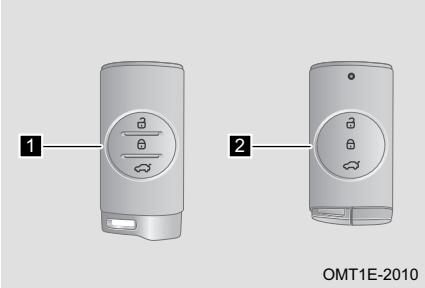
3-13. Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap 178

3-1. Key Information

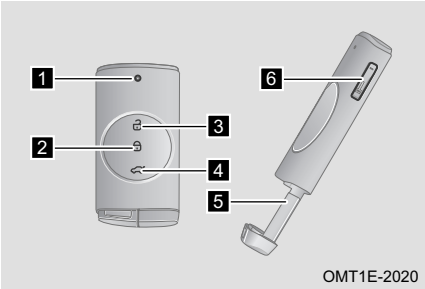
Smart Key

Smart key is used to unlock/lock doors remotely and open back door within about 20 m (no blind area) of the vehicle.



1 Smart key (metal texture)

2 Smart key (plastic texture)



1 Indicator

2 Lock button

3 Unlock button

4 Back door opener button

5 Mechanical key

6 Mechanical key release button

Function limitation

■ In the following conditions, the smart key may not work properly:

1. There are more than one smart keys being used nearby.
2. The distance between vehicle and smart key is over 20 m.
3. The smart key is in contact with, or is covered by a metallic object.
4. The smart key is placed near an electrical appliance (such as mobile phone or personal computer).
5. The key is near wireless communication devices that have the similar frequency with the remote control key (such as portable radio).
6. The key is near facilities that generate strong waves (such as TV tower, radio station, power station, airport,train station).

⚠ CAUTION

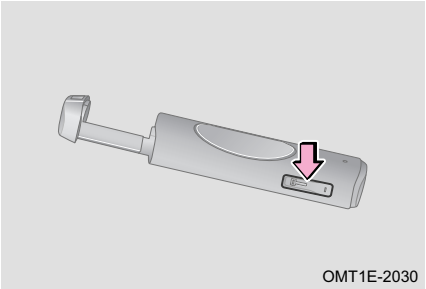
- This product is a low frequency radio device and can be disturbed by various radio services or radiation from industrial, scientific and medical applications.
- Do not change the transmission frequency, increase the transmitter power (including installation of the wireless RF power amplifier), or install an external or other transmitting antenna without permission.
- When using it, do not interfere with legal wireless communications.In case of interference, immediately stop using and take measures to eliminate the interference before continuing to use it.

■ Under the following conditions, the smart key battery may be low or depleted:

1. The remote control distance gradually decreases.
2. Remote control function does not work even without interference.
3. Instrument cluster prompts "Smart key battery power is low".
4. When pressing any smart key button, indicator on the key is dim or does not come on.

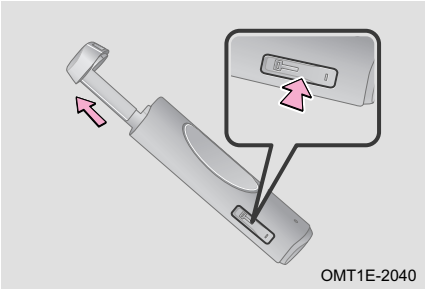
Mechanical key

The mechanical key built into the smart key can be used to unlock/lock doors in emergency.

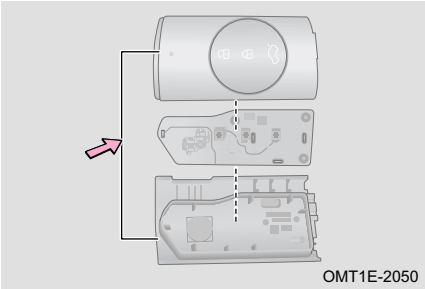

OMT1E-2030

Press mechanical key release button on the side of smart key to take mechanical key out. After using, return it to original place for easy-to-carry and anti-loss (for details, refer to "3-2. Door").

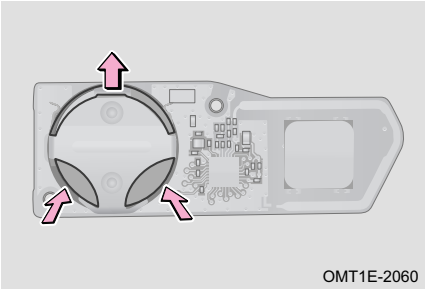
Replacing smart key battery


OMT1E-2040

Step 1: Press release button and take out mechanical key.


OMT1E-2050

Step 2: Pry off smart key cover using a flathead screwdriver with the tip taped, and then remove circuit board.


OMT1E-2060

Step 3: Remove battery from circuit board and install a new one with positive (+) facing up.

Step 4: Install smart key in place in the reverse order of removal.

Step 5: After replacing the battery, check if the smart key operates properly (press any smart key button to confirm that indicator comes on).

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used lithium battery cannot be handled as general household rubbish, please handle used battery according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

READ

- Make sure that positive and negative terminals of battery are placed correctly.
- Smart key battery type: 3V-CR2032 lithium battery.
- If the smart key cannot operate properly, please contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

CAUTION

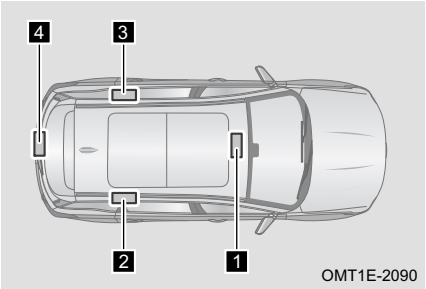
- Only use the battery type recommended by Chery.
- Do not bend electrode and terminal when installing battery.
- Make sure your hands are dry and away from water when replacing the battery.
- Do not touch new battery by oily hand. Failure to do so may cause battery corrosion.
- Do not touch or move any components inside the smart key, or its functions may not work properly.
- There are some difficulties when replacing key battery, so that, it may be damaged if replacing the battery by yourself. It is recommended that you replace it at Chery authorized service station.

WARNING

Take special care to prevent children from swallowing the removed battery or other components, otherwise it may cause death or serious injury to the children.

Effective Range

Antenna location



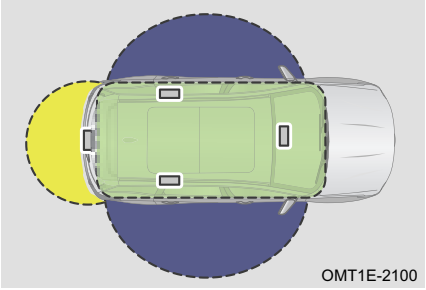
1 Interior front low-frequency antenna

2 Rear right door high performance low-frequency antenna

3 Rear left door high performance low-frequency antenna

4 Luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna

Detectable area



Starting or switching power area

Start or switch power mode when smart key is within effective range of interior front low-frequency antenna.

Unlocking/locking area

Unlock/lock the doors when smart key is within effective range of door high performance low-frequency antenna.

Opening back door area

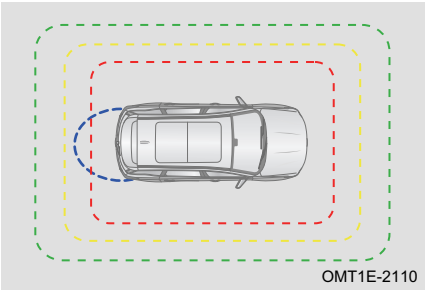
Open the back door when smart key is within effective range of luggage compartment outer low-frequency antenna.

In the following conditions, the system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in luggage compartment.
2. When locking doors, smart key is too close to the window or roof.
3. Check if the smart key is placed together with strong electromagnetic interference sources.

READ
Low-frequency antenna can detect areas within 1.5 m away from smart key. Therefore, when using keyless entry or ENGINE START STOP function, ensure that distance between the smart key and low-frequency antenna meets the requirement.

Automatically sensing area



Smart turning on courtesy lights area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the courtesy lights will turn on automatically.

Away locking area

Leave the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors automatically lock.

Approaching to unlocking area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors automatically unlock.

Smart opening back door area

Approach the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, doors can not automatically unlock/lock.

READ

- Please leave the vehicle after the four doors and back door are closed, otherwise the automatic sensing lock function may not work properly.
- Due to the interference of surrounding environment, functions such as keyless entry, ENGINE START STOP, courtesy, approach unlocking, away locking with carrying smart key may be affected. When the functions are abnormal, please change other methods (such as manual unlocking, remote unlocking) to unlock/lock or start the vehicle.

Anti-Theft System

Engine immobilizer system

Smart key has a built-in transponder chip. If the smart key is not pre-matched into engine anti-theft module, the built-in chip will stop engine from starting.

In the following conditions, the engine immobilizer system may not work properly:

1. Smart key is in contact with a metallic object.
2. Do not modify or remove engine immobilizer system.
3. Smart key is too close to or contacts smart key (key with a built-in transponder chip) of another vehicle.

CAUTION

- Do not match the smart key by yourself, otherwise the engine immobilizer system may not work properly.
- If the engine fails to start, but the starter works normally, it may be due to the interference of engine immobilizer system, please contact Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.

Vehicle anti-theft system

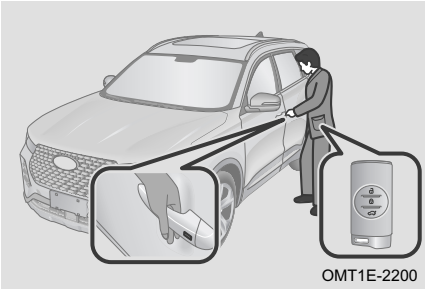
When vehicle is in fortifying mode and invalid entry is detected, the vehicle anti-theft system will send sound-light alarm, alerting owner that the vehicle is in an invalid opening state.

READ

- The vehicle anti-theft system will not be enabled if the doors are locked by mechanical key. It is recommended to lock doors by smart key.
- After locking doors by smart key, the vehicle anti-theft system will be triggered if front left door is unlocked and opened by mechanical key.
- To prevent unexpected triggering of vehicle anti-theft system and vehicle theft, before leaving the vehicle, check that nobody is in vehicle, all doors and windows are closed properly and fortified successfully.
- When vehicle anti-theft system is in anti-theft state, vehicle anti-theft system can be deactivated if pressing unlock button on smart key or vehicle starts successfully.

Keyless Entry

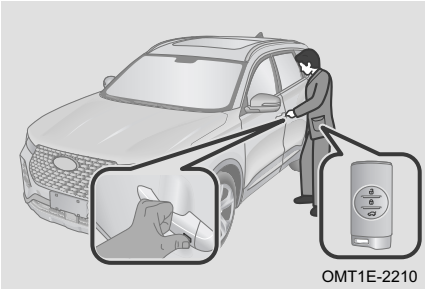
Unlocking doors


OMT1E-2200

Method 1: Touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock.

Method 2: Approach vehicle when carrying smart key, courtesy lights will turn on, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock.

Locking doors


OMT1E-2210

Method 1: Touch the lock sensing area with fingers when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically lock.

Method 2: Leave vehicle when carrying smart key, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically lock.

READ

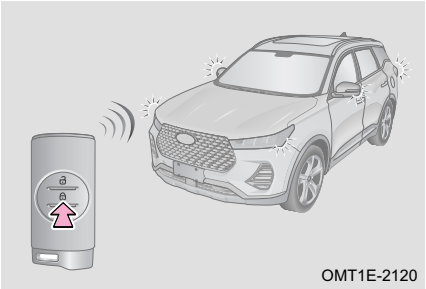
- Smart key sensing unlock/lock need to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").
- Sensing unlock/lock function is closed after the vehicle is locked for 3 days, restart the engine will restore sensing unlock/lock function.

CAUTION

- Do not put smart key together with computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. doing so may not sense unlock/lock.
- Smart key sensing lock function is only operated when vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, all doors and back door are completely closed and smart key is not stored in vehicle.
- After leaving the vehicle and closing all doors and back door, smart key is left in vehicle or there is no smart key around vehicle within approximately 2.5 m, smart key sensing active lock function will not be activated.
- If the smart key is carried away from vehicle over approximately 2.5 m, turn signal lights do not flash and horn sound is not heard (successful fortifying prompt), inspect if the vehicle is locked to avoid misoperation or unsatisfied condition, resulting in unlocking vehicle.
- After smart key sensing active lock function is activated, if smart key keeps near the vehicle, vehicle will lock automatically for more than 15 minutes, if the key still is in there for another 15 minutes, for the purpose of power saving, smart key sensing function will be temporarily closed, the function can only be activated after opening any door or back door and then closing all doors and back door.

Vehicle Fortifying

Fortifying operation



■ Fortifying mode

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode as well as four doors and back door are closed, press the smart key lock button or touch the lock sensing area with fingers or leave the vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the door will automatically lock and enter the fortifying status.

Successful fortifying prompt: Turn signal lights flash once and anti-theft horn sounds once.

Unsuccessful fortifying prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice and anti-theft

horn does not sound.

■ Secondary fortifying mode

After deactivating vehicle fortifying, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 s.

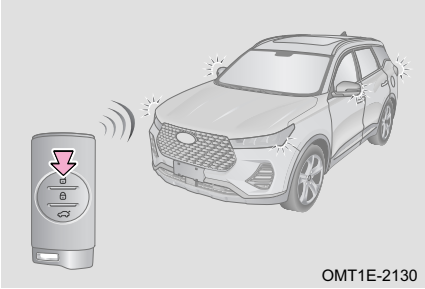
READ

- Fortifying prompt is set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").
- After deactivating vehicle fortifying, if any of the four doors and back door is opened, the vehicle will exit secondary fortifying mode.

CAUTION

- Vehicle fortifying cannot be set if vehicle power is not switched to OFF mode.
- If four doors are closed and back door is not closed completely, the central lock will lock once and vehicle fortifying is not set successfully.
- If back door is closed and any door is not closed, the central lock will lock and then unlock and vehicle fortifying is not set successfully.

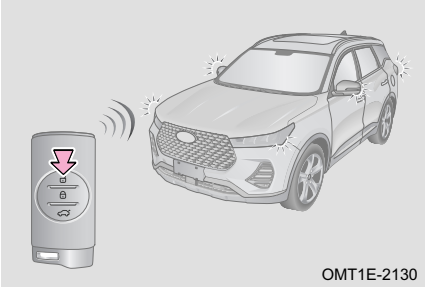
Fortifying deactivation mode



Press unlock button on smart key or touch the unlock sensing area with four fingers or approach vehicle when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key and doors automatically unlock, the vehicle will exit fortifying mode.

Successful deactivating prompt: Turn signal lights flash twice.

Alarm mode



When the vehicle is in fortifying state and invalid entry is detected (such as any door or back door is opened invalidly, alarm will be activated), the vehicle will enter cyclic alarm mode, anti-theft horn sounds and turn signal lights flash. Press unlock button on smart key or switch vehicle power to ON mode to deactivate alarm.

READ

- For single alarm source, maximum 3 alarm cycles will be activated.
- For more than one alarm sources, maximum 8 alarm cycles will be activated (sound-light alarm will stop after 8 cycles).

Smart Key Vehicle Locating Function

Press lock button on smart key continuously twice within several seconds, horn sounds 6 times, at the same time, turn lights flash 6 times.

Remote start (if equipped)

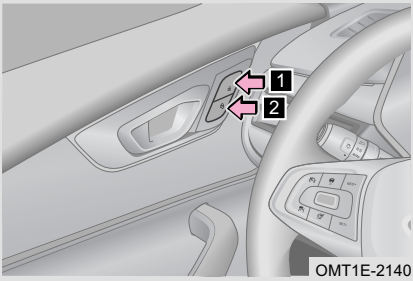
When vehicle power mode is OFF, vehicle is locked and smart key is not in vehicle, press and hold lock button on smart key for several seconds to start it remotely and air conditioning operates automatically at the same time; The vehicle will automatically shut off after vehicle is started remotely for 10 minutes.

READ

- There is no one in the vehicle including the operator when starting the vehicle remotely.
- The vehicle can be unlocked and can not be locked by using remote start.
- Distance when starting vehicle remotely using smart key should not exceed normal operating distance of smart key.
- When single time for starting vehicle remotely is 10 minutes, allow vehicle starting remotely twice, if the two starting has been used, after vehicle power is turned to ON mode, remote start can be used.
- After vehicle is started remotely, some function cannot be operated (such as headlight combination switch, wiper combination switch, audio function), depress brake pedal when carrying smart key on your person, quit remote mode to restore normal operation.

3-2. Doors

Doors Lock Switch



OMT1E-2140

In the vehicle, press unlock/lock switch to unlock/lock doors.

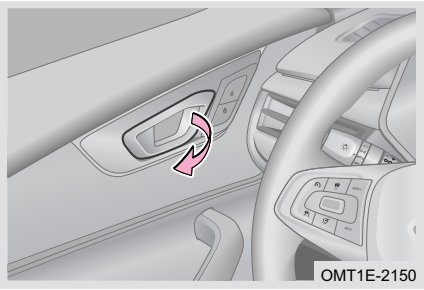
1 Unlock switch

2 Lock switch

READ

When four doors are closed and vehicle speed is > 15 km/h, the door will automatically lock (if this function is equipped); Door automatic lock need to be set in audio system. For details, refer to "Audio System".

Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle


OMT1E-2150

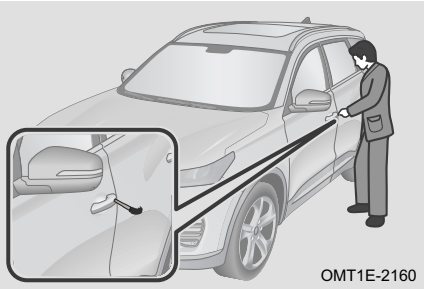
When doors are unlocked, pull door inside handle simply to open door.

When doors are locked, pull door inside handle for the first time to unlock the door, and pull it again to open the door.

Door Mechanical Switch

Vehicle can not be unlocked/locked electrically when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the doors can be unlocked/locked with door mechanical switch.

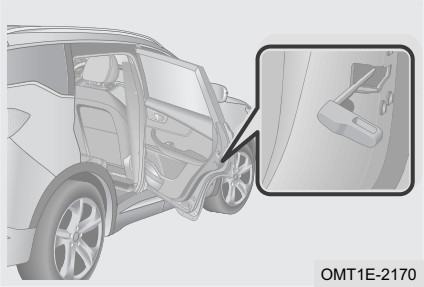
Unlocking/locking front left door manually


OMT1E-2160

Step 1: Insert mechanical key into hole under left front door handle cover. Turn the key upwards to pry the cover.

Step 2: Insert the mechanical key into the front left door key hole, turn clockwise to lock the door, counterclockwise to unlock the door.

Locking front right door/rear doors manually


OMT1E-2170

Step 1: Open front right door and remove the rubber protective film from the door panel edge lock body. Press down the yellow lock knob with key tip, thus the locking operation on front rear door can be achieved.

Step 2: Attach the rubber protective film and close front right door. Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked.

Step 3: Open the rear doors and insert the mechanical key into mechanical switch hole from the door panel edge lock body. Press down the white lock knob with mechanical key, thus the locking operation on rear doors can be achieved.

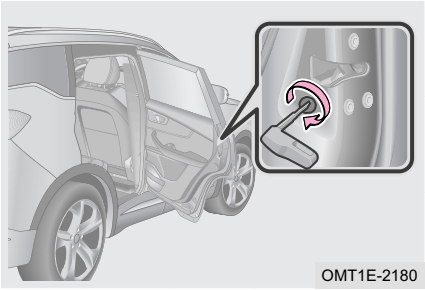
Step 4: Close rear doors. Pull the door handle to make sure the door is locked.

READ

- If the doors can not be unlocked/locked electrically, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When using door mechanical switch, please check if the doors are locked successfully one by one after locking. If unsuccessful, please contact Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

Child-Protection Lock

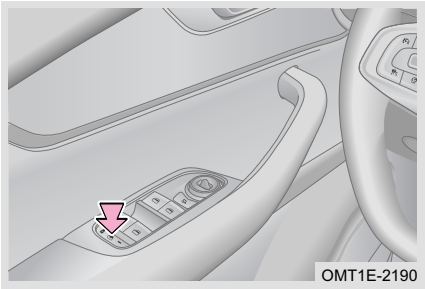
Manual child lock


OMT1E-2180

Lock: Use mechanical key or a suitable screwdriver to turn in the direction of arrow to lock the child-protection lock.

Unlock: Use mechanical key or a suitable screwdriver to turn in the opposite direction of arrow to unlock the child-protection lock.

Power child lock (if equipped)


OMT1E-2190

Press passenger side window OFF switch, passenger side window OFF switch indicator comes on and the power child lock is locked, as well as disable passenger side window switch. Press the switch again to cancel this function and the indicator goes off.

READ

If the door is not opened within 2 minutes while vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power child lock can be used.

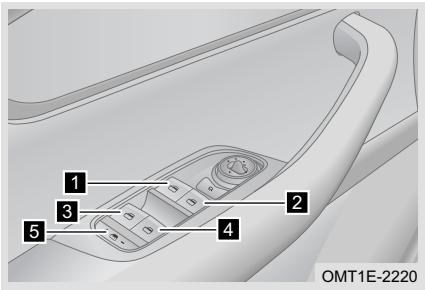
WARNING

- The system is independent and can not replace the central lock mechanism in any case.
- Make sure that all doors are closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may occur.
- When a child is seated in vehicle rear seat, always lock child-protection locks to prevent rear door being opened accidentally while driving.
- After child-protection lock is locked, in case of a collision or other accidents, if there is someone in vehicle, remember that, rear door can only be opened from outside.
- In hot weather, if vehicle stalls and all doors and windows close, do not allow any animal or child in vehicle alone. Otherwise, even if it is a short time, it may cause serious injury even death due to sharp temperature rise.

3-3. Windows

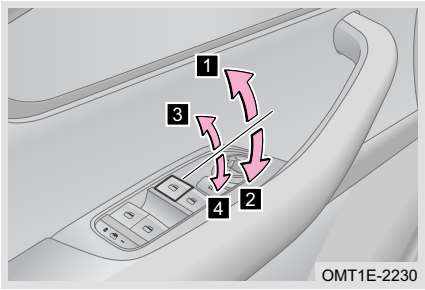
Power Windows

Power window switch



OMT1E-2220

1 Front left power window switch
2 Front right power window switch
3 Rear left power window switch
4 Rear right power window switch
5 Passenger side window OFF switch



OMT1E-2230

Operate power window switch after vehicle power is switched to ON mode:

1 Pull the switch to top, window will go up automatically; Press the switch again, window will stop moving.

2 Press the switch to bottom, window will go down automatically; Press the switch again, window will stop moving.

3 Pull the switch upwards by one level, window will go up; Release the switch, window will stop moving.

4 Press the switch downwards by one level, window will go down; Release the switch, window will stop moving.

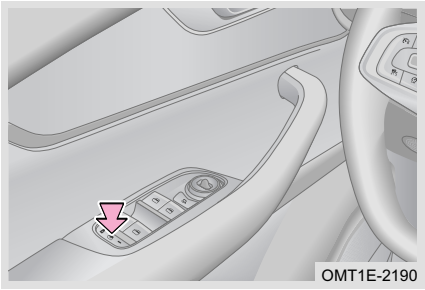
READ

- Only vehicles with window jam protection function have one-touch window raising function.
- At the moment of starting engine, window up and down operation will be suspended to provide large current for engine starting.
- If the door is not opened within 2 minutes while vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, the power window can be used.
- After leaving vehicle in low temperature environment for a long time, when operating power window switch, window glass cannot be fully opened or closed. In this case, release the switch and then operate again, repeat 3-5 cycles to recover.

WARNING

- To avoid personal injury, it is driver's responsibility to guide all passengers to operate power window up/down switch and prevent children using, meanwhile, it is recommended to ensure that vehicle power has been switched OFF mode or non-mechanical device is closed when leaving the vehicle.
- Take extra care to close windows, failure to do so may cause serious against injury!Models without window jam protection function, when window glass rises, passenger body may be caught, resulting in serious injury.Models with window jam protection function, jam protection function can be activated in jam protection area to protect passenger. However, for the thin or soft objects, jam protection function may be not activated, resulting in serious injury.

Passenger side window OFF switch


OMT1E-2190

Press passenger side window OFF switch, passenger side window OFF switch indicator comes on, passenger side window switch will be disabled and the power child lock (if equipped) is locked. After disabling, only window switches on driver side can be used to operate passenger side windows (this function is recommended when there is a child in vehicle). Press the switch again to cancel this function and the indicator goes off.

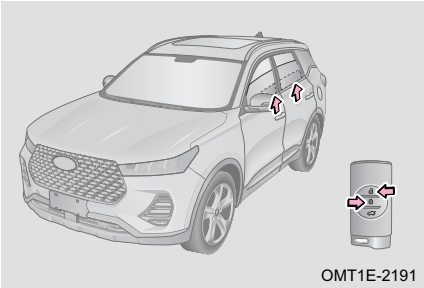
Window Remote Control Function

Window remote control down function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, close all doors and press unlock button on smart key and hold at least 1.5 s, four door window glass will go down. If releasing the unlock button on smart key or opening any door in this process, window glass will stop going down.

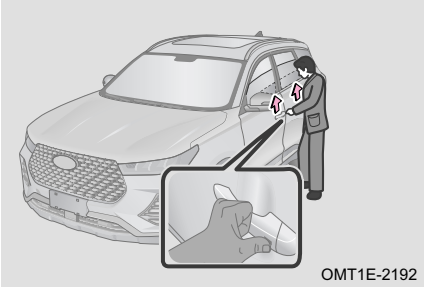
Remote control one-touch window up function (for models with jam protection function)

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key or touch the lock sensing area with fingers (carry smart key on your person), the vehicle will enter fortifying status and the window glass of four doors will rise up automatically.


OMT1E-2191

During window glass automatic rising, press the unlock/lock button again, and window glass stops rising.

After pressing unlock button, glass stops rising, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 s.


OMT1E-2192

During window glass automatic rising, touch lock sensing area with fingers (carry smart key on your person),and window glass stops rising.

After touching unlock sensing area with four fingers (carry smart key on your person), glass stops rising, if four doors and back door are not operated, the vehicle will lock automatically and enter fortifying state after 30 s.

READ

If abnormal closing occurs during remote control one-touch window up, turn lights flash 1 time and horn continuously sounds 5 times to alarm customer that window may not close normally.

WARNING

Before using remote control up/down window function, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by window.

Window Jam Protection Function (If Equipped)

Jam protection function

During one-touch window up or remote control one-touch window up, if obstacle is encountered in jam protection area and resistance exceeds a certain value, window will stop rising and go down slightly.To close window, move away obstacle and operate again.

Canceling jam protection function

If obstacle is encountered twice continuously when rising the window, the window will stop rising, jam protection function will be canceled. If the battery cable is disconnected during working or non working process, jam protection function will be canceled.

For protecting the window regulation system, window jam protection function and one-touch window up function will be canceled in some conditions to avoid potential safety hazard. At this time, the window only has the conventional up-down function. After jam protection learning, the one-touch window up function of corresponding door will return to normal.

Overheat protection function

For protecting motor, if operating window up-down continuously, overheat protection function actively disables the control of corresponding window switch.After motor temperature returns to normal, it recovers. This function will not affect the use of other normal window up-down functions.

Manual learning function

If one-touch window up function and jam protection function do not operate normally, perform the following steps to restore function. Make sure that there are no obstacles within window range during learning.

Step 1: Switch vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Operate window switch and hold for 2 s manually to fully close window, then release the switch;

Step 3: Operate window switch and hold for 2 s manually to fully open window, then release the switch;

Step 4: Try to operate auto window up function;

Step 5: If window cannot close automatically, please repeat the above steps to set.

If window position memory setting is lost, it can also be set with remote control one-touch window up function. At this time, window will go down to bottom, then go up to top. Window can be closed normally and setting is successful.

READ

- If auto window up function cannot be restored after repeating the above steps, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When driving over roads with potholes or uneven surfaces, gravity may affect door system unexpectedly. In this case, window may reverse and go down while rising by one-touch window up function. This is a small probability event and normal.

CAUTION

- If disconnecting battery cable and then reconnecting it, auto window up function and jam protection function will not work.

CAUTION

- Jam protection function is a kind of window safety protection function. Never try to active it repeatedly using various objects, in improper methods or even by intentionally pinching any part of your body. Falling to do so may damage window regulation system mechanism or injure personal accidentally.
- When closing window, even if it is equipped with jam protection function, always keep window close area is clear. Otherwise, if system encounters a thin object and cannot sense it, jam protection will not work.If someone's hand or finger is caught, extremely serious injury will be caused.

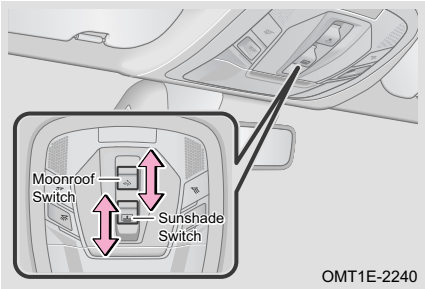
3-4. Panoramic Moon Roof

Panoramic Moon Roof (A)

Introduction

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, remote control (if equipped) and voice recognition function.

Usage



■ Opening/closing sunshade

Push sunshade switch backward when sunshade is closed, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push the switch again, sunshade will slide to fully open position.

Push sunshade switch forward when sunshade is fully open, sunshade will slide to middle position. Push the switch again, sunshade will slide to fully close position.

■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

Push moon roof switch backward when moon roof is closed, the moon roof will tilt up.

When moon roof is tilted up, push moon roof switch forward to close moon roof or directly push the sunshade switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

■ Opening/closing moon roof

Push the moon roof switch backward when the moon roof is tilted up, the moon roof will slide open. Push the switch backward again, the moon roof will slide open to the maximum position.

When moon roof is open, push moon roof switch forward to close moon roof or directly push the sunshade switch forward to close the moon roof and sunshade at the same time.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System".

READ

- For details about remote moon roof control, refer to "3-10. Remote Control System (If Equipped)"
- Moon roof switch and sunshade switch are designed in 2 levels, first level: manually control opening range; second level: automatically control opening range, please select proper level according to your needs.

CAUTION

- The moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate position.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.
- If there is water on moon roof after raining, to prevent water from flowing into cab when opening moon roof, always wipe off water or tilt moon roof up to remove these water before opening it.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.
- When you find that there is a false jam protection, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

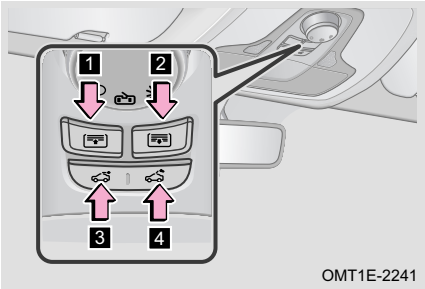
Before closing moon roof, take extra care to see the vehicle clearly and make sure that passengers cannot be caught by moon roof.

Panoramic Moon Roof (B)

Introduction

There are many ways to open/close moon roof, such as by moon roof switch, remote control (if equipped) and voice recognition function.

Usage



■ Opening/closing sunshade

1 Gently press "" button to slide and open sunshade. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and open fully.

2 Gently press "" button to slide and close sunshade. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and close fully.

■ Opening/closing moon roof

3 Gently press "" button to slide and open moon roof. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and open fully.

4 Gently press "" button to slide and close moon roof. Release the button, it stops moving. Firmly press "" button to slide and close fully.

■ Tilting up/closing moon roof

3 When moon roof tilts up, gently press "" button to close the moon roof.

4 When moon roof closes, gently press "" button to tilt up the moon roof.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System".
- When moon roof is open, if turning off engine start stop switch, it will return automatically.

CAUTION

- The moon roof jam protection function fails, initial memory position may be lost, therefore, it is necessary to recalibrate position.
- Regularly clean the dust and debris in moon roof rails and strips with water. After vehicle washing or raining, completely wipe the water on the moon roof glass before using.
- When moon roof is frozen or covered with snow, forcibly opening moon roof will damage the moon roof glass and the motor.

Moon Roof Remote Control Function

Moon roof remote control open function

When vehicle in fortifying mode or vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press and hold unlock button on smart key for several seconds, moon roof opens automatically. Open the sunshade first and then open the moor roof automatically.

Moon roof remote control close function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode and four doors are closed, press lock button on smart key, vehicle will enter fortifying mode and moon roof closes automatically.

Moon Roof Jam Protection Function

Jam protection function

When moon roof glass runs from open state to the closed state or from tilt up state to closed state, it will automatically return under certain resistance.When jam protection occurs in horizontal position, the moon roof glass will return to half open position. When jam protection occurs in vertical position, it will return to tilt up position.

When sunshade runs from half open state to the closed state, it will automatically return under certain resistance.

⚠ WARNING

Do not pass body parts or objects through moon roof during opening and closing, even if it is equipped with jam protection function.

Overheat protection function

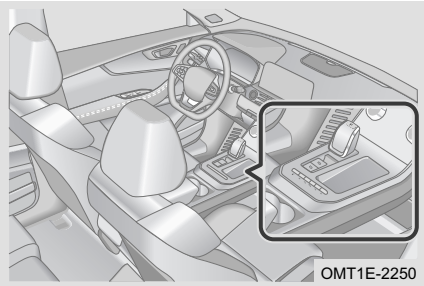
Do not operate the moon roof frequently in a short time, otherwise the motor will overheat or enter the overheat protection state of the motor. After that, the moon roof will not respond to key action. The overheat protection will be automatically canceled after the motor is cooled.

3-5. Wireless Charging (If Equipped)

Wireless Charging

Introduction

Wireless charging adopts electromagnetic induction technology, with convenience, versatility, novelty and safety, to make you can have a better experience while driving.



While vehicle power is switched to ON mode, the wireless charging starts to work after putting the mobile phone in wireless charging sensing area, and the audio head unit displays " ". The audio head unit displays " " after charging is completely.

In the following conditions, the wireless charging may not work properly:

1. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone is more than 8 mm away from wireless charging sensing area.
2. The mobile phone cannot be charged if the back of the phone has thick metal (such as coin, metal mobile phone shell), and audio head unit displays " ".
3. When the surface temperature of wireless charging sensing area is > 65°C due to sun exposure, the wireless charging module will trigger self-protection and the mobile phone cannot be charged.

READ

- Wireless charging function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Please put the mobile phone in the center of the mobile phone slot. If you accelerate, decelerate or turn sharply during driving, the mobile phone will shake, which may affect the charging efficiency and stability.
- Wireless charging function is set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

CAUTION

- In the process of normal use of the vehicle, in order to ensure the identification of the vehicle to smart key, there will be a temporary charging shield.
- If your mobile phone does not support the wireless charging function, it is recommended that do not use the wireless charging patch. The quality of the wireless charging patch in the market is uneven, and frequent use is easy to damage (such as function failure, interface poor contact, metal foreign object recognition failure, etc.).

Phone forgetting reminder function

While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, open driver door and the mobile phone is left in wireless charging sensing area, it will sound an alarm 20 seconds or take the phone out within 20 seconds, the alarm will stop.

READ

- Phone forgetting reminder function only supports mobile phones with wireless charging function.
- Phone forgetting reminder function is set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

3-6. Audio and Entertainment System

Audio Control Panel (No disc DVD)

1 Media

Click to enter media screen, including radio, music, images and video.

2 Phone

Click to enter Bluetooth phone, including recent calls, dialing, contacts and Bluetooth settings.

3 Cloudrive

Click to enter Cloudrive screen, including each application menu in system.

4 A/C menu quick button

Air conditioning system operation screen can be quickly entered by sliding the A/C menu quick button.

7 Volume + button

Click to increase volume.

8 Hazard light switch

Click to turn on hazard light.

9 Audio main menu button

Click to switch to main menu screen.

10 Cloudrive interconnection button

Click to switch to Coudrive interconnection screen.

5 Power button

Turn on/off the audio and entertainment system. In case of abnormal operation, the system can be restarted by long pressing the power button.

6 Volume - button

Click to decrease the volume.

11 Answer button

Click to answer the call.

12 SET button

Click to enter SET screen, including the setting of each function.

Audio Control Panel (Inter-vehicle Head Unit)

1 Navigation

Click to enter on-board navigation function.

2 Media

Click to enter media screen, including radio, music, images and video.

3 Phone

Click to enter Bluetooth phone, including recent calls, dialing, contacts and Bluetooth settings.

8 Volume + button

Click to increase volume.

9 Hazard light switch

Click to turn on hazard light.

10 Audio main menu button

Click to switch to main menu screen.

4 Cloudrive

Click to enter Cloudrive screen, including each application menu in system.

5 A/C menu quick button

Air conditioning system operation screen can be quickly entered by sliding the A/C menu quick button.

6 Power button

Turn on/off the audio and entertainment system. In case of abnormal operation, the system can be restarted by long pressing the power button.

7 Volume - button

Click to decrease the volume.

11 Cloudrive interconnection button

Click to switch to Coudrive interconnection screen.

12 Navi button

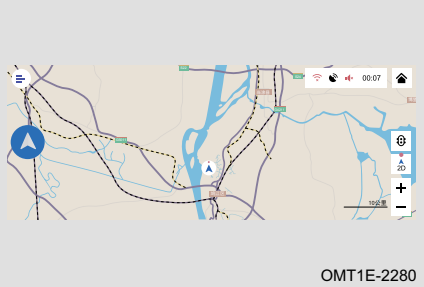
Click to enter on-board navigation function.

13 SET button

Click to enter SET screen, including the setting of each function.

Audio Operation

Navigation

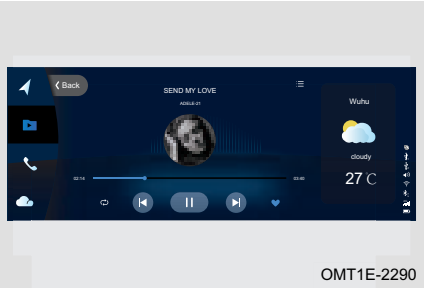


OMT1E-2280

Click the navigation button on main menu or navigation button on audio control panel to enter the on-board navigation function.

"User Notice" screen will be displayed after navigation is turned on. Select the touch button "☑" to cancel the reminder afterwards. On-board navigation screen can be entered after clicking [Agree].

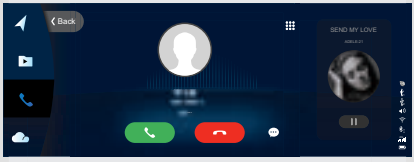
Media



OMT1E-2290

Media includes radio, music, pictures and videos.

Bluetooth phone

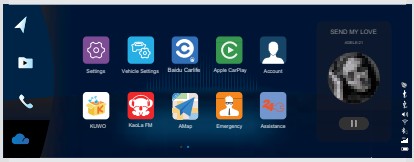


OMT1E-2300

Click the phone button on main menu to enter phone screen.

To use Bluetooth phone function, connect the cellphone Bluetooth to vehicle first.

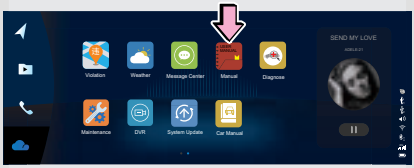
Cloudrive



OMT1E-2310

Cloudrive includes settings, vehicle settings, Baidu Carlife, account, KuWo, koala FM, Amap, emergency, assistance and other applications.

Electronic user manual



OMT1E-2320

Click the Cloudrive button on main menu to enter Cloudrive screen.

Click user manual application on Cloudrive screen to check the detailed operating instructions of the audio head unit system.

Electronic vehicle operation manual

OMT1E-2321

Click the Cloudrive button on main menu to enter Cloudrive screen.

Click vehicle operation manual application on Cloudrive screen to check electronic vehicle operation manual.

Audio Setting

Setting

OMT1E-2330

【Bluetooth】: Click to enter Bluetooth setting screen to set Bluetooth connection.

【Wi-Fi】: Click to enter Wi-Fi setting screen to set Wi-Fi hotspots and Wi-Fi.

【Sound】: Click to enter sound setting screen to set button tone, loudness, incoming broadcast, default volume, voice broadcast, vehicle speed volume, Arkamys sound effect, sound field setting, sound effect setting, volume adjustment and reset default settings.

【Display】: Click to enter display setting screen to set screen switch, video limit switch, screen brightness setting, wallpaper setting, theme setting and reset default settings

【System】setting: Click to enter system setting screen to set "Hello, Xiaohu", custom wake-up words, wake-up prompt, continuous recognition, active care, wireless charging, mobile phone forgetting reminder, sound source location mode, MODE key definition, radio area setting, phone-link setting, version information, storage space, and reset default settings.

Vehicle setting

OMT1E-2340

【Smart Key】: Click to enter smart key screen to set courtesy lights, Bluetooth keyless entry, smart key sensing back door opening, smart key sensing unlock & lock.

【Cluster】setting: Click to enter the cluster screen to set overspeed alarm, cluster backlight level setting and cluster time.

【Light】setting: Click to enter the light setting screen to set daytime running light, intelligent high beam assist, headlamp delay and atmosphere light.

【A/C】setting: Click to enter the A/C setting screen to set cabin active air change, cabin automatic cleaning and automatic defog functions.

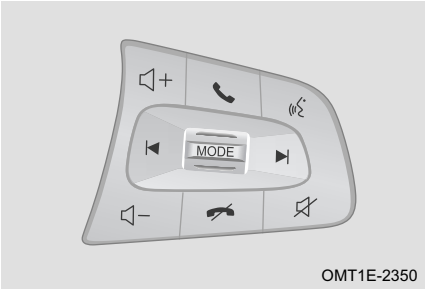
【Auxiliary Drive】setting: Click to enter the auxiliary driving setting screen to set lane departure warning, lane departure sensitivity, blind area monitoring, door opening warning, speed limit assistance, distance warning system, automatic emergency braking system, traffic congestion assistance system/integrated cruise assistance system, front collision warning system, adaptive cruise system, steering force mode and rear approach warning switch.

【Basic Information】setting: Click to enter the vehicle basic setting to set automatic locking, mirror auto folding, fortifying prompt, language, back door opening degree and reset default settings.

READ

- The settings are different depending on the configuration of the vehicle. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Enter to vehicle setting after switching vehicle power to ON mode.
- The setting of atmosphere light can display different colors of atmosphere light according to the sound effect or the switching of driving mode.

Audio Button



OMT1E-2350

Increase volume button " ◁+ ":

Short press: Increase volume;

Long press: Increase volume continuously.

Decrease volume button " ◁− ":

Short press: Decrease volume;

Long press: Decrease volume continuously.

Answer button " ": Answer the call or enter Bluetooth screen.

Hang up button " ": Hang up the call.

Voice recognition button " ": Short press to enable the local voice recognition function; Long press to enable the Siri function or Carlife voice function.

Audio mute button " ": Mute the audio.

Mode switch button "MODE": Switch the mode: Radio - USB - Bluetooth music - local store music - radio.

Left/right switch button "|◀ ▶|":

Music: Previous/next switch;

Radio: previous/next radio switch.

Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped)

Users can turn on the voice recognition function and use it by following methods when audio head unit is turned on:

1. Short press the voice recognition button " " on steering wheel to enable the voice recognition function.

Directly say "Hello, Xiaohu" to enable the voice recognition function

Phone-link

Baidu Carlife (Android) (If Equipped)

Specific operating procedures are as follows:

Step 1: Carlife application is installed in smart device;

Step 2: Connect USB port and phone with original phone data cable;

Step 3: Enter Carlife application operation screen.

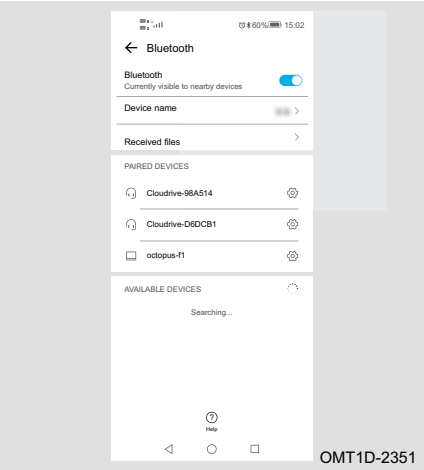
QDlink (Android)

■ Download method

QDLink App is downloaded to your phone by any of the following methods:

1. Scan the QDLink QR code to download.
2. Scan the Google QR code to download.
3. Search and download in Google Play.

■ Connecting method

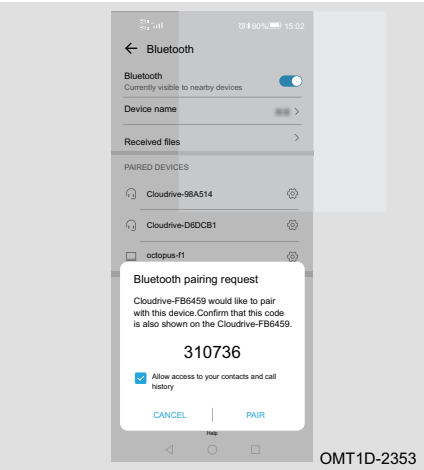


OMT1D-2351

Step 1: Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of phone;

OMT1D-2352

Step 2: Turn Bluetooth to ON on Settings (Bluetooth) screen of audio, search and connect device, and Bluetooth pairing request will be popped up on phone;

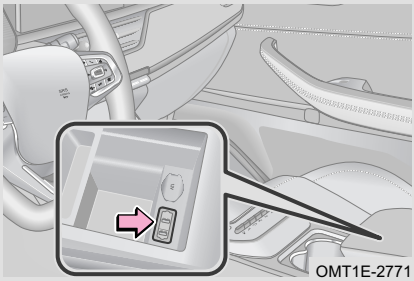


OMT1D-2353

Step 3: Select PAIR on Bluetooth pairing request screen of phone to complete the Bluetooth pairing operation;

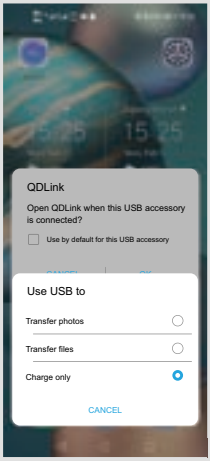
OMT1D-2356

Step 4: Click the QDLink application;


OMT1E-2771

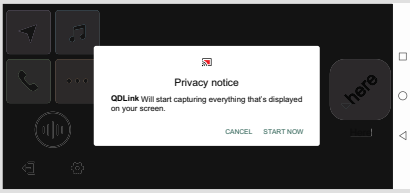
Step 5: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable, and USB permission request will be popped up on phone;

Note: Only USB port " " ssupports QDlink screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



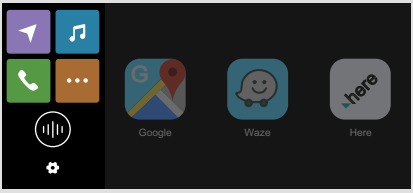
OMT1D-2355

Step 6: Select Transfer files on USB permission request screen, turn QDLink to ON when connecting USB is agreed, and screencast request screen will be popped up on phone;



OMT1D-2357

Step 7: Select START NOW on screencast request screen of phone;

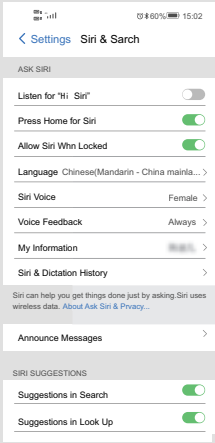


OMT1D-2358

Step 8: Enter QDlink screencast screen.

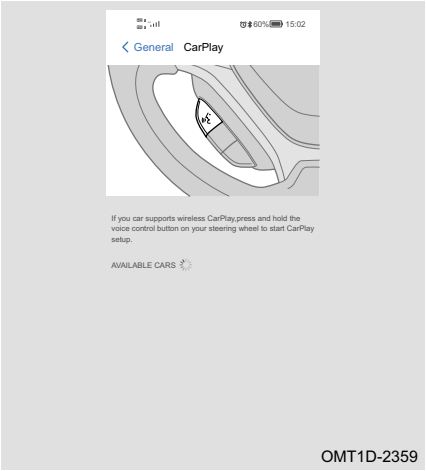
Apple CarPlay (iOS)

■ Connecting method



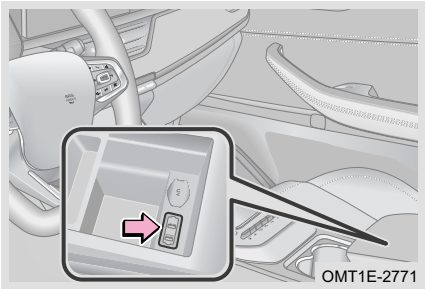
OMT1D-2360

Step 1: Turn Listen for "Hi Siri" and Press Home for Siri to ON on Settings (Siri & search) screen of phone;



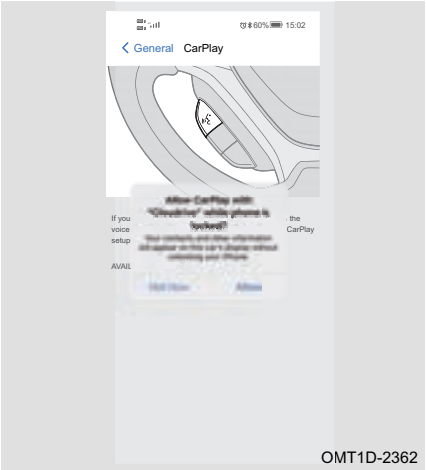
OMT1D-2359

Step 2: Turn CarPlay to ON on Settings (General) screen of phone;


OMT1E-2771

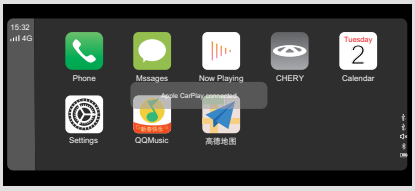
Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Apple CarPlay screencast function.



OMT1D-2362

Step 4: Select Allow on CarPlay permission request screen;

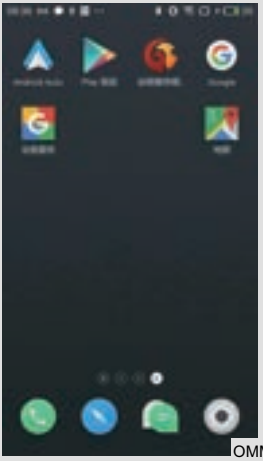


OMT1D-2361

Step 5: Enter Apple CarPlay screencast screen.

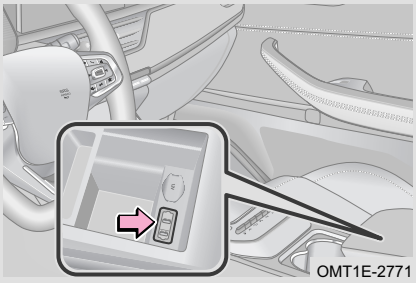
Android Auto (Android)

■ Connecting method


OMM1D-2303

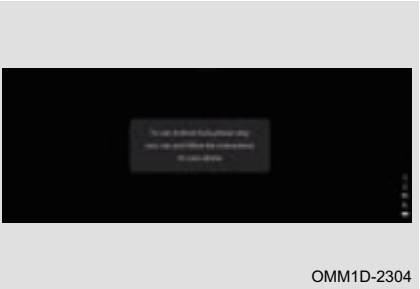
Step 1: Install the Google Framework;

Step 2: Perform the installation in Google Play and run Android Auto, install all supporting softwares according to the system prompt and update the existing program, and then Android Auto can run normal after completing the update.


OMT1E-2771

Step 3: Connect USB port and phone using original data cable;

Note: Only USB port " " supports Android Auto screencast function. Before phone-link, please turn on the developer permissions in the phone settings.



OMM1D-2304

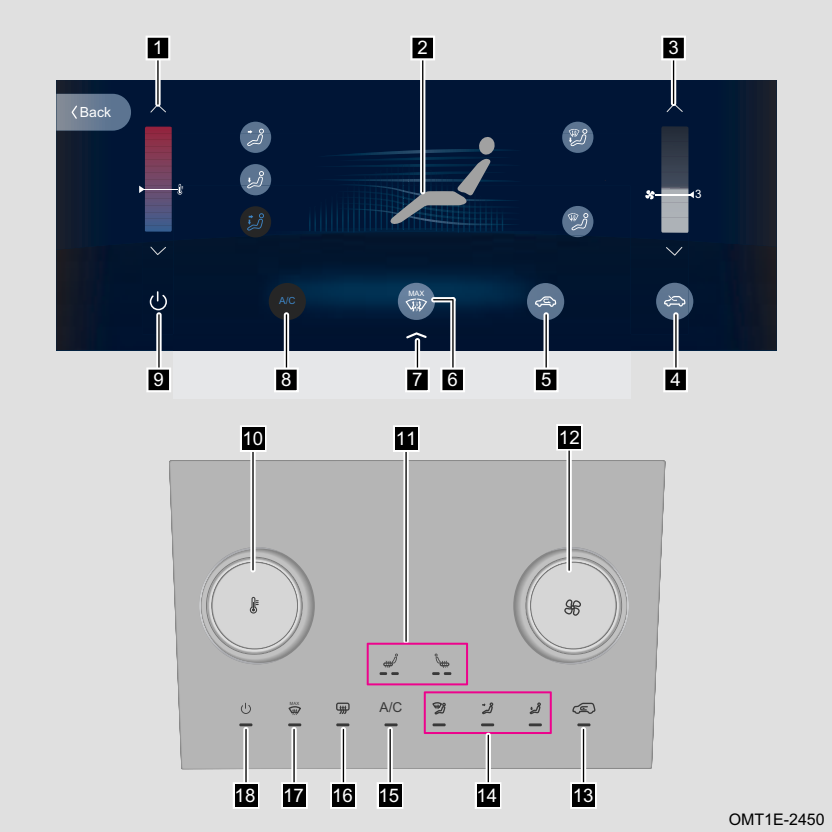
Step 4: If this phone is connected to the vehicle for the first time (a prompt will pop up on the head unit, please operate according to the prompt on the mobile phone, stop the vehicle and pull the parking brake), then the first connection setting can be completed;

OMM1D-2305

Step 5: Click "Android Auto" on the head unit APP to enter "Android Auto" mapping interface.

3-7. Air Conditioning System

Electric Air Conditioning System



1 Temperature increase/decrease soft button

2 Mode status display

3 Airflow volume increase/decrease soft button

4 Outside circulation soft button

5 Recirculated soft button

6 Front windshield defog and defrost soft button

7 Air conditioning screen closing soft button

8 A/C switch soft button

9 A/C switch soft button

10 Temperature adjustment knob

11 Driver/front passenger seat heater button

12 Air speed adjustment knob

13 Outside/recirculated air mode button

14 Mode adjustment button

15 A/C switch button

16 Rear defrosting button

17 Front windshield defog and defrost button

18 A/C switch button

Temperature adjustment

The temperature can be adjusted by operating the temperature adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Temperature adjustment knob: Turn it clockwise to increase the temperature, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the temperature.

Airflow volume adjustment

The airflow volume can be adjusted by operating the airflow volume adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Airflow volume adjustment knob: Turn it clockwise to increase the volume, turn it counterclockwise to decrease the volume.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by operating the outside/recirculated air mode button on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Press outside/recirculated air mode button. If indicator comes on, it indicates that it is in recirculated air mode; if indicator goes off, it indicates that it is in outside air mode.

Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

1. In dusty environment.
2. Insulate car interior from exterior smells.
3. Preventing outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.
4. To quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle.

A/C switch

The air conditioning cooling can be achieved by operating the A/C switch on air conditioning control panel or the A/C soft button on display screen.

The A/C switch indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning compressor is turned on. The indicator goes off, indicating that air conditioning compressor is turned off.

OFF button

The air conditioning system can be turned off by operating OFF button on air conditioning control panel or soft button "⏻" on the display screen.

Front windshield defog and defrost

The front windshield defog and defrost function can be achieved by operating front windshield defog and defrost button on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Front windshield defog and defrost button indicator comes on, indicating that the front windshield defog and defrost function starts to operate. The indicator goes off, indicating that the front windshield defog and defrost function stops operating.

Front windshield defog and defrost: Most of the airflow blows to front windshield, a small amount of airflow blows to side windshield.

When the air volume is not OFF, touching front windshield defog and defrost button will start the outside air mode and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

For the best defog and defrost effect, please operate as follows:

Step 1: Before driving, make sure that the inner surface of glass is clean and dry, if there is obvious dust or water drop, it is necessary to wipe off;

Step 2: Air volume adjustment: Max level;

Step 3: Temperature adjustment: Adjust comfortable temperature;

Step 4: Outside/recirculated air mode switching: Select outside air mode;

Step 5: Mode adjustment: Touch defrost button or adjust foot/defrosting mode;

Step 6: Turn on the refrigeration system: A/C indicator comes on.

READ

- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep outside air mode. If select recirculated air mode, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in winter: Please keep outside air mode, adjust the direction of partial heat, the air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the windows on both sides, and when outside temperature is above 0°C, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.
- If the A/C does not cool, it will affect the defogging effect, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, to improve comfort in vehicle, adjust mode and air volume to proper position.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Please do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged quickly.
- Poor visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting

After starting the vehicle, press the rear defrosting button, the indicator comes on, indicating that the rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting function starts to work. The indicator goes off, indicating that the rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting function stops working.

The function will automatically shut off after the defrosters have operated about 20 minutes.

CAUTION

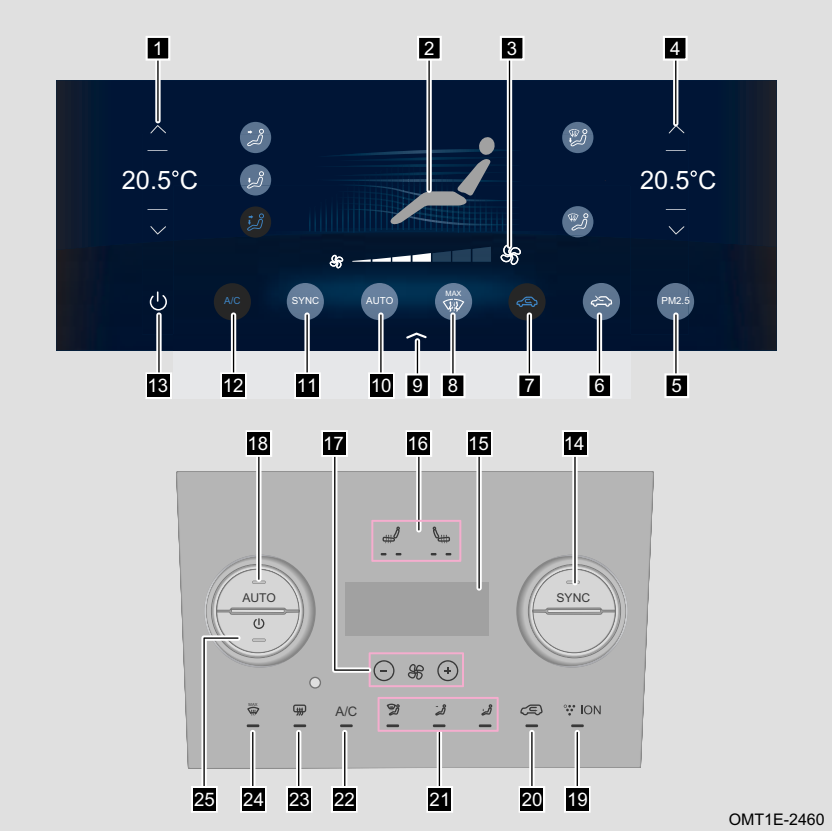
- Make sure that the rear defroster is turned off when the fog and frost on window surfaces are cleared.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear defroster cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror when the defroster is operating or has just turned off.

Automatic Air Conditioning System

Automatic Air Conditioning System (A)



1 Driver side temperature increase/ decrease soft button

2 Mode status display

3 Airflow volume adjustment soft button

4 Front passenger side temperature increase/ decrease soft button

5 Air purification soft button

10 AUTO mode soft button

11 Single mode soft button

12 A/C switch soft button

13 A/C switch soft button

14 Single mode button

19 Anion button

20 Outside/recirculated air mode button

21 Mode adjustment button

22 A/C switch button

23 Rear defrosting button

6 Outside circulation soft button

7 Recirculated soft button

8 Front windshield defog and defrost soft button

9 Air conditioning screen closing soft button

15 Mode status display

16 Driver/front passenger seat heater button

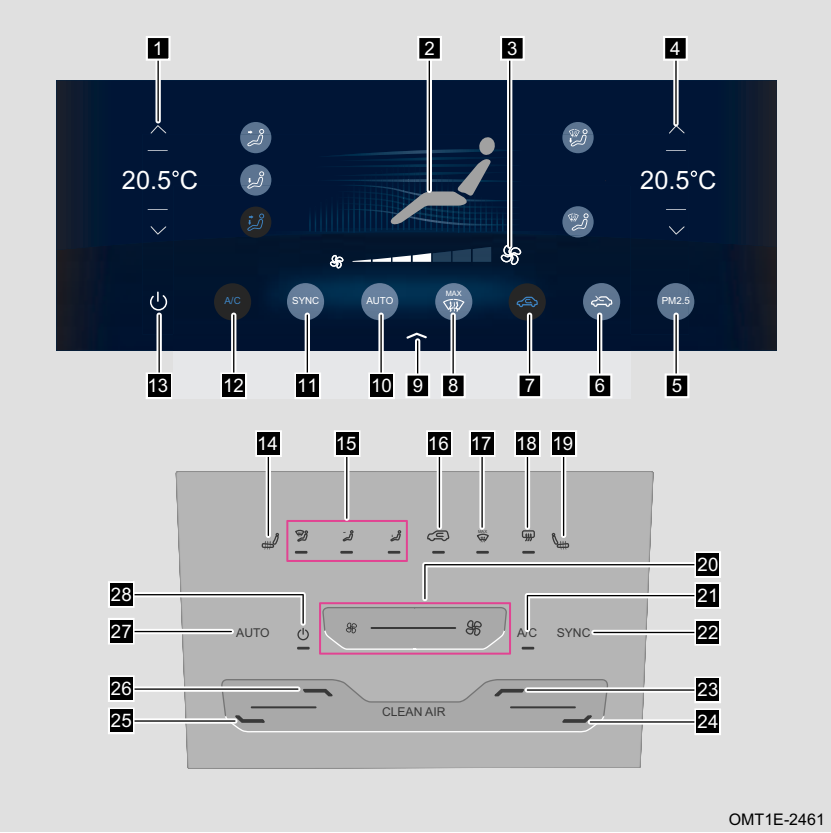
17 Air speed adjustment button

18 AUTO mode button

24 Front windshield defog and defrost button

25 A/C switch button

Automatic Air Conditioning System (B)



1 Driver side temperature increase/decrease soft button

2 Mode status display

11 Single mode soft button

12 A/C switch soft button

21 A/C switch button

22 Single mode button

3 Airflow volume adjustment soft button

4 Front passenger side temperature increase/decrease soft button

5 Air purification soft button

6 Outside air mode soft button

7 Recirculated air mode soft button

8 Front windshield defog and defrost soft button

9 A/C screen closing soft button

10 AUTO mode soft button

13 A/C switch soft button

14 Driver seat heater button

15 Mode adjustment button

16 Outside/recirculated air mode button

17 Front windshield defog and defrost button

18 Rear defrosting button

19 Front passenger seat heater button

20 Air speed adjustment button

23 Front passenger side temperature increase button

24 Front passenger side temperature decrease button

25 Driver side temperature decrease button

26 Driver side temperature increase button

27 AUTO mode button

28 A/C switch button

Driver side temperature adjustment knob/front passenger side temperature adjustment knob

The A/C temperature can be adjusted by operating the driver side temperature adjustment knob/front passenger side temperature adjustment knob on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Airflow volume adjustment button

The airflow volume can be adjusted by operating the airflow volume adjustment button on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

There are 7 levels for airflow volume, and the actual airflow volume level will be displayed on the display.

Press airflow volume adjustment button to directly recall the A/C menu screen on audio head unit.

Dual mode button

The dual mode can be controlled by operating the dual mode button on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Single mode: SYNC indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning is in single control mode.Driver side and front passenger side temperature cannot be adjusted separately.

Dual mode: SYNC indicator goes off, indicating that the air conditioning is in dual control mode.Driver side and front passenger side temperature can be adjusted separately.

READ
Directly rotating the front passenger side temperature adjustment knob can enter dual mode and SYNC indicator goes off.

Outside/recirculated air mode button

The outside/recirculated air mode can be switched by operating the outside/recirculated air mode button on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Press outside/recirculated air mode button. If indicator comes on, it indicates that it is in recirculated air mode; if indicator goes off, it indicates that it is in outside air mode.

Use the recirculated air mode under following conditions:

- In dusty environment.
- Insulate car interior from exterior smells.
- Preventing outside exhaust gas from entering vehicle.
- To quickly cool or heat the air in the vehicle.

A/C switch

The air conditioning cooling can be achieved by operating the A/C switch on air conditioning control panel or the A/C soft button on display screen.

The A/C switch indicator comes on, indicating that the air conditioning compressor is turned on. The indicator goes off, indicating that air conditioning compressor is turned off.

AUTO button

The air conditioning AUTO mode can be turned on by operating AUTO button on air conditioning control panel or soft button on the display screen.

In AUTO mode, with operating A/C switch, blowing mode, adjusting air volume or temperature LOW/HI, the corresponding function exits from AUTO mode.

In AUTO mode, outside/recirculated air mode switches and the circulation function exits the automatic control, and other functions are still in the AUTO mode.

In AUTO mode, operating the AUTO button will not exit from AUTO mode.

A/C switch button

The air conditioning system can be turned off by operating A/C switch button on air conditioning control panel or soft button "⏻" on the display screen.

Front windshield defog and defrost

The defog/defrost function can be achieved by operating front windshield defog and defrost button on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Front windshield defog and defrost button indicator comes on, indicating that the front windshield defog and defrost function starts to operate. The indicator goes off, indicating that the front windshield defog and defrost function stops operating.

Front windshield defog and defrost: Most of the airflow blows to front windshield, a small amount of airflow blows to side windshield.

When the air volume is not OFF, touching front windshield defog and defrost button will start the outside air mode, the maximum air volume and air conditioning compressor forcibly.

For the best defog and defrost effect, please operate as follows:

Step 1: Before driving, make sure that the inner surface of glass is clean and dry, if there is obvious dust or water drop, it is necessary to wipe off;

Step 2: Air volume adjustment: Max level;

Step 3: Temperature adjustment: Adjust comfortable temperature;

Step 4: Outside/recirculated air mode switching: Select outside air mode;

Step 5: Mode adjustment: Touch defrost button or adjust foot/defrosting mode;

Step 6: Turn on the refrigeration system: A/C indicator comes on.

READ

- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep A/C on. If A/C is off, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in humid climate (such as rain and snow): Please keep outside air mode. If select recirculated air mode, it will affect defogging effect.
- When defogging in winter: Please keep outside air mode, adjust the direction of partial heat, the air outlets on both sides of the instrument panel face the windows on both sides, and when outside temperature is above 0°C, A/C auxiliary defogging is needed.
- If the A/C does not cool, it will affect the defogging effect, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- After wiping off all frost or fog, to improve comfort in vehicle, adjust mode and air volume to proper position.

CAUTION

- For driving safety, please use the defogging function correctly.
- Please do not use recirculated air mode for a long time in winter, otherwise the front windshield will be fogged quickly.
- Poor visibility will increase the risk of traffic accidents and personal injury. Therefore, it is very important for traffic safety to ensure a good visibility during driving.

Rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting

After starting the vehicle, press the rear defrosting button, the indicator comes on, indicating that the rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting function starts to work. The indicator goes off, indicating that the rear defrosting/outside rear view mirror defrosting function stops working.

The function will automatically shut off after the defrosters have operated about 20 minutes.

CAUTION

- Outside rear view mirror defrosting function is not standard. Please refer to the actual vehicle.
- Make sure that the rear defroster is turned off when the fog and frost on window surfaces are cleared.
- Do not scratch or damage the heater wires when cleaning the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror.
- When the battery is low, the rear defroster cannot be turned on to ensure that vehicle starts normally.

WARNING

To prevent burning yourself, do not touch the rear windshield or outside rear view mirror when the defroster is operating or has just turned off.

Mode Adjustment

The mode adjustment can be achieved by operating the mode adjustment button (defrosting mode, face mode and foot mode can be combined) on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen.

Defrosting mode: Airflow is blown out from defroster outlet.

Face mode: Airflow is blown out from center and face outlets on both sides.

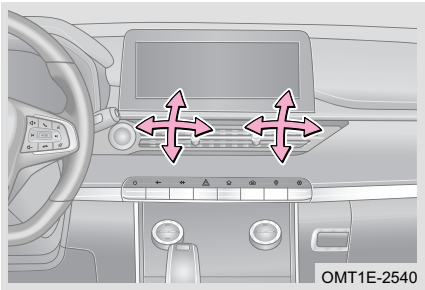
Foot mode: Airflow is blown out from foot outlet.

READ

- Face mode and defrosting mode cannot be combined.
- If windshield windows become fogged-up during driving, defrosting mode is recommended. For details, refer to Front windshield defog and defrost in this section.

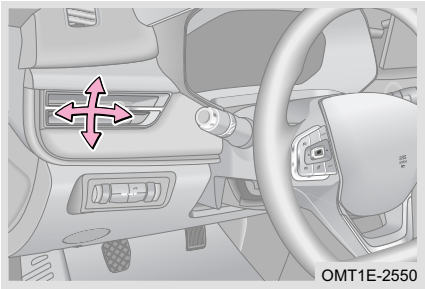
Air Outlets Airflow Control

Center outlets


OMT1E-2540

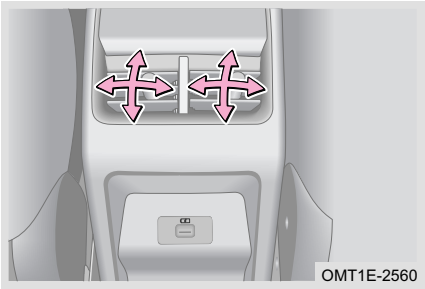
Move center outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Side outlets


OMT1E-2550

Move side outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

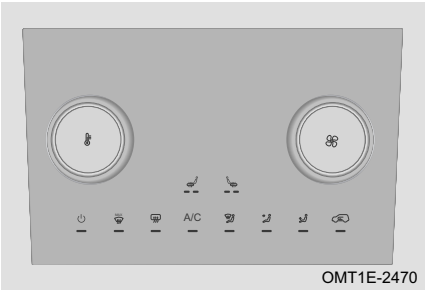
Armrest outlets


OMT1E-2560

Move outlet adjustment lever up, down, left or right by hand to adjust direction of airflow.

Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation

Air conditioning refrigeration operation (electric air conditioning)



OMT1E-2470

When the engine is working:

Step 1: Turn on the air conditioning compressor (A/C indicator comes on) and adjust the air volume knob;

Step 2: The temperature can be adjusted by operating the temperature adjustment knob (counterclockwise to cool down) on air conditioning control panel or the soft button on display screen;

Step 3: Mode adjustment: Face mode;

Step 4: Outside/recirculated air mode adjustment: Select recirculated air mode when ambient temperature is above 30°C.

For the best cooling effect, please operate as follows:

Step 1: Please keep the surface of the air conditioning filter clean without obvious blockage;

Step 2: Air volume adjustment: Max level;

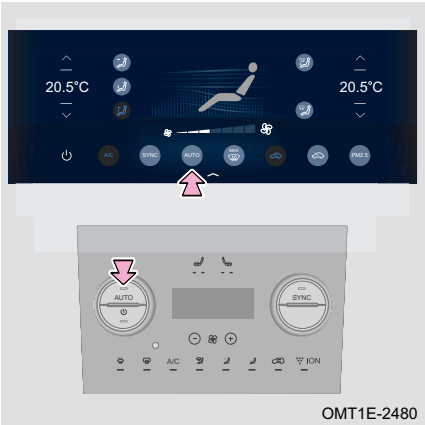
Step 3: Temperature adjustment: Max cool;

Step 4: Outside/recirculated air mode adjustment:Select recirculated air mode;

Step 5: Mode adjustment: Face mode;

Step 6: Turn on the refrigeration system: Turn on the air conditioning compressor (A/C indicator comes on).

Air conditioning refrigeration operation (automatic air conditioning)



OMT1E-2480

When the engine is working:

Press the AUTO button to automatically control the blowing mode, air volume, outside/recirculated air mode and operation of the refrigeration system by setting the temperature;

In AUTO mode, when operating A/C switch, blowing mode, adjusting air volume or temperature LOW/HI, outside/recirculated air mode switching, the corresponding function exits from AUTO mode;

For your convenience and to improve the cooling effect of the air conditioner, operate the AUTO button and set the air conditioning temperature to 22°C.

For the best cooling effect, please operate as follows:

Step 1: Please keep the surface of the air conditioning filter clean without obvious blockage;

Step 2: Air volume adjustment: Max level;

Step 3: Temperature adjustment: Max cool;

Step 4: Outside/recirculated air mode adjustment:Select recirculated air mode;

Step 5: Mode adjustment: Face mode;

Step 6: Turn on the refrigeration system: Turn on the air conditioning compressor (A/C indicator comes on).

READ

- Surface dirt and block in air conditioning condenser may cause poor refrigeration effect, please keep condenser clean.
- When air is cooled down quickly in heat humid condition, fog may be seen from outlet, it is normal physical phenomenon.
- When the temperature is low, such as in winter, even if indicator comes on after operating A/C switch, air conditioning compressor still cannot be started.
- After using air conditioning refrigeration system, water is dripping from the air conditioning drain pipe and forming a pool, it is normal.
- Refrigerant filled in air conditioning system will decrease as time, if you feel refrigeration effect of air conditioning is poor, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair in time.
- It is recommended to turn on air conditioning refrigeration system not less than 5 minutes every month and open the window simultaneously, this will help to prevent air conditioning system damage due to lack of lubricant, and also prevent evaporator odor due to moist and germ.
- If air conditioning is on and vehicle is continually climbing long slopes, or is in heavy slow moving traffic for a prolonged period, the engine may become overheated. Please observe the high coolant temperature warning light.If engine is overheating, it is advisable to turn off air conditioning.
- After temperature in vehicle is decreased to lower temperature, to reduce the influence to power system power and fuel consumption, compressor will turn off automatically, so if using air conditioning in spring and autumn seasons with low temperature, the compressor will be turned on or off automatically, this is normal.

READ

- During sudden acceleration, overtaking and climbing, power system needs more power for compensation. At this time, if the air conditioning is operating, the compressor may be turned off automatically, if it does not turn off and you feel lack of power, it is recommended to turn off air conditioning.

CAUTION

- To extend service life of air conditioning system, do not use the air conditioning for a long time with low speed when using air conditioning refrigeration.
- It is forbidden to repair air conditioning system by yourself, since the high pressure refrigerant is harmful to human, it is necessary to contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.
- Please purchase Chery special refrigerant and compressor lubricant at Chery authorized service station, otherwise, air conditioning system damages sustained by this are not under warranty.
- In hot summer, the temperature in closed vehicle will quickly increase due to sunshine, this may cause personal or animal injury or death, especially for the infants, even in short time.

Air Conditioning Heating Operation

OMT1E-2491

When the engine is working:

Step 1: Turn the blower on;

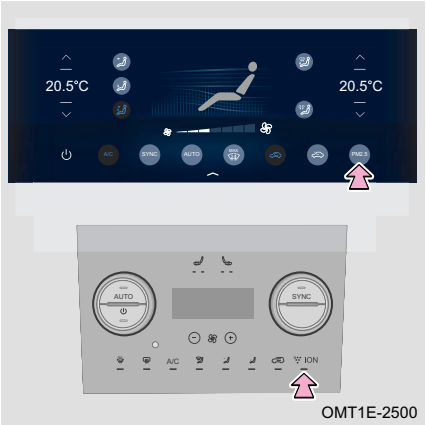
Step 2: Air conditioning panel operation: Rotate temperature adjustment knob clockwise indicates heating; Adjust temperature to desired temperature directly on air conditioning screen of audio panel;

Step 3: It is recommended to adjust to foot mode and turn off A/C.

Air Quality Control System (If Equipped)

When the outside air quality level is detected to decline in AUTO mode, the recirculated air mode will be turned on automatically. When the air quality returns to a proper level, the recirculated air mode will be turned off automatically.This function cannot be used to detect unpleasant gas. When the ambient temperature is ⩽ 2°C, air quality control system does not respond, to prevent windshield and window from fogging up.

One-button Purification Function (If Equipped)



OMT1E-2500

Operate the anion button on air conditioning control panel to enable the one-button purification function of air conditioning system to purify the air inside the vehicle.

Anion button indicator comes on, indicating that the one-button purification function is enabled. The indicator goes off, indicating that the purification function stops operating.

Using the air purification soft button on the display can only enter the one-button purification display screen, but it cannot be used to turn on/off the one-button purification function.

When the air quality in the vehicle is poor, the system will provide corresponding reminder. Please operate by following the reminder, press the anion button to turn on the air purification function.

READ

- After operating the anion button, the inside air purification function is enabled. To ensure that the vehicle is not fogged, the response method of automatic air conditioning in summer, winter, spring and autumn is not exactly the same, but purification effect can be achieved.
- When operating the anion button, the corresponding operation indicator comes on, inner/outer circulation damper will switch, and the air volume and mode may change.
- The filter element blockage reminder (lasts for 60 seconds) appears after operating the anion button every 5000 km. The reminder will appear again after driving for 10000 km.
- One-button purification function is inoperative and the button is deactivated in following conditions.

READ

1. When the wiper is turned on (in high speed or low speed), one-button purification function cannot be turned on after 20 seconds;
2. One-button purification function cannot be turned on when front windshield defog and defrost is turned on;
3. One-button purification function cannot be turned on when water temperature is < 70°C or inner temperature is < 15°C while outer temperature is < 2°C, (one-button purification function can be turned on only when water temperature is > 70°C and inner temperature is > 15°C while outer temperature is < 2°C).

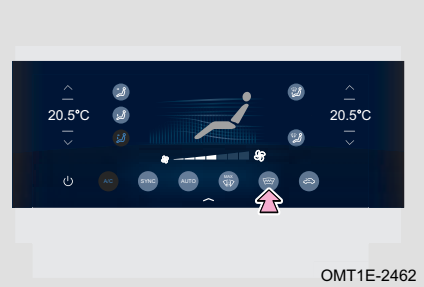
- The air purification effect in winter is not obvious due to low ambient temperature in winter.

Anion Function (If Equipped)

OMT1E-2520

Operate the anion button on the air conditioning control panel to turn on anion and one-button purification functions at the same time. Compared with the single one-button purification function, the air purification efficiency is higher and the air environment quality in the car is better after the anion function is added.

Front - Windshield Heating (If Equipped)



OMT1E-2462

Press touch button, turn on / and off the function.

Avoid turning on the front windshield heating function for a long time.

Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped)

OMT1E-2530

The automatic defogging function can be set through the audio. When front windshield has the risk of fogging, the air conditioning will automatically remove the fog on the front windshield to ensure the driving safety.

READ

After the setting item of automatic defogging function is turned on, the air conditioning will start automatically under certain conditions, which is a normal phenomenon.

Interior Active Ventilation and Automatic Cleaning (If Equipped)

Interior active ventilation

In hot summer, when the vehicle is parked outside, the temperature in the vehicle will be high. The interior active ventilation function can be set through the audio setting to cool the temperature in advance, while the peculiar smell from the interior trim under high-temperature is removed.

When the outside temperature is higher than 20°C and the system detects that the battery voltage meets the requirements, the vehicle will deactivating fortifying and the blower will start working in advance (30 seconds).

When the working time of the blower exceeds 30 seconds, any door is opened or the vehicle is fortified, the blower will stop working.

> READ
>
> The blower can operate up to two times before starting vehicle.

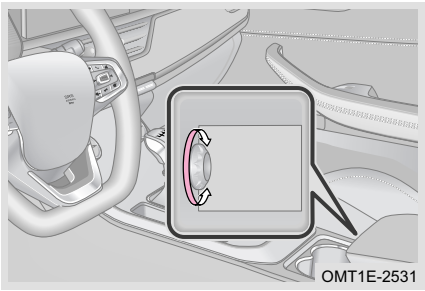
Interior automatic cleaning

The interior automatic cleaning function can be set through the audio setting to dry the air conditioning pipeline to keep air conditioning system dry and avoid the accumulation of a large number of bacteria and other dirt.

A/C was turned on during the last driving, and the battery voltage meets the requirements. After the vehicle is fortified for more than 5 minutes, the blower starts to work for 1 minute and then stops working.

> READ
>
> Interior active ventilation and automatic cleaning are set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling / Warming Function (If Equipped)



Place necessary items (For example: Canned drinks) in the auxiliary fascia armrest box to perform A/C cooling / warming operation. Rotate inner button of armrest box to cool / warm the necessary items.

> WARNING
>
> Those items shall be not too big, otherwise, the auxiliary fascia armrest box can not be closed. Movement of driver's arm may be interfered if the auxiliary fascia armrest box is not closed. Be careful not to get hurt.

3-8. Storage Space

Storage Space

Glasses box

Glasses box is near front interior light closely. It can be used to store glasses or other small items.

Door storage boxes

Door storage boxes on front and rear doors can be used for storing maps, cups and other items.

Glove box

Glove box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> Before driving, make sure that the glove box is closed in place. Otherwise in case of emergency braking or emergency steering, it may cause accidents and serious injury or even death.

Auxiliary fascia console storage box

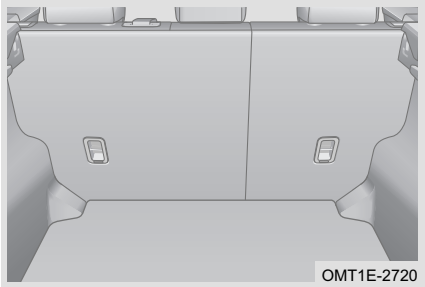
Auxiliary fascia console storage box is used to store map, instructions and other items.

> ⚠ WARNING
>
> - Adults or children are not allowed to sit on the auxiliary fascia console storage box.
> - Auxiliary fascia console storage box must be closed when the vehicle is running, and the opening auxiliary fascia console storage box may hinder the driver's arm movement to prevent injury.

Seat storage bag

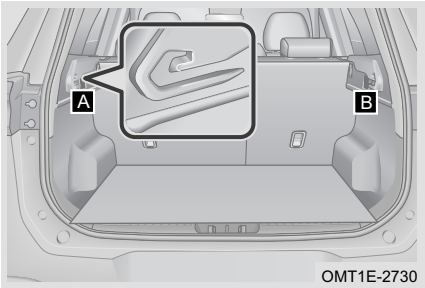
Front seatbacks are both equipped with storage bags on backside, which are used to store documents, instruction etc.

Luggage compartment



The split-folding rear seats provide convenience for storage of cargo (for details, refer to "2-10. Seats").

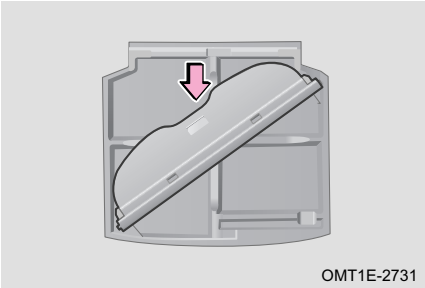
Luggage curtain (if equipped)



OMT1E-2730

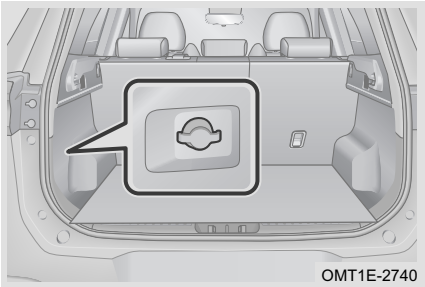
Pull the luggage curtain to the slots of point A and point B to secure it, and confirm if it is secured properly.

> READ
>
> Do not place any object on luggage curtain, otherwise, it may result in luggage curtain damage.


OMT1E-2731

Push the two ends of the luggage curtain inward to remove the curtain. After the curtain is removed, it can be placed in the luggage compartment storage box (if equipped). When the curtain is placed in the luggage compartment storage box (if equipped), it can be taken out in the middle vertical direction.

Fixing rope buckle


OMT1E-2740

They are located at both sides of luggage compartment, and used for securing objects which easily fall down.

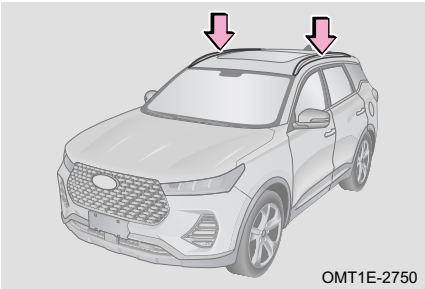
When stowing luggage in the vehicle, observe the following precautions:

1. Be careful to keep the vehicle balanced.
2. For better fuel economy, do not carry unneeded weight.
3. Make sure that the stowing items are not oversize to prevent the back door from closing properly.
4. To enlarge space for stowing luggage, the rear seats can be folded when no passenger in seats (for details, refer to "2-10. Seats").

WARNING

- Do not drive with the back door open or not closed, to prevent items from being thrown out to cause personal injury.
- Do not stack goods or luggage higher than seatback. Keep them low, as close to the floor as possible to prevent them sliding forward in event of braking, causing personal injury.
- Do not allow anyone to sit in the luggage compartment. The passengers should sit in their seats with their seat belts properly fastened. Otherwise, they are much more likely to suffer serious injury in the event of sudden braking or a collision.

Carrier



Roof carrier is used for loading cargo, load is 50 kg. Be sure that the total weight of the loading cargo on the carrier or loading tool (such as luggage compartment, cross rod etc.) does not exceed 50 kg. Overweight will cause carrier, panoramic moon roof glass, body roof and other components damaged, the various problems caused by overweight are not within the warranty.

CAUTION

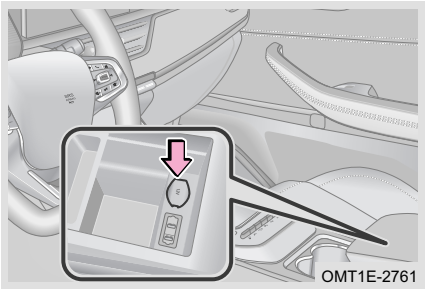
- Do not overload the roof carrier.
- Before driving, make sure that cargo is securely fastened on the roof carrier.
- If loading long or wide cargo, never exceed the vehicle overall length or width.
- Be careful not to scratch the surface of the roof. Place a blanket or other protector between cargo and roof if necessary.

WARNING

- Apply loads evenly. Improper loading may cause deterioration of steering or braking control, which may cause death or serious injury.
- Loading cargo on roof carrier will make the center of the vehicle gravity higher. Avoid high speeds, sudden starts, sharp turns, sudden braking or abrupt maneuvers, otherwise it may result in loss of control or vehicle rollover due to failure to operate vehicle correctly.

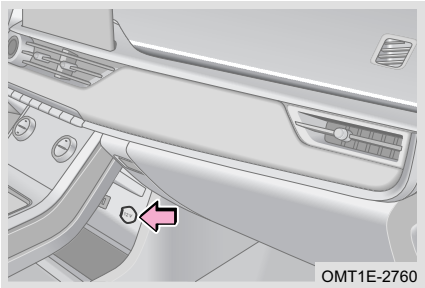
3-9. Power Outlet

Power Outlet


OMT1E-2761

For some models, power outlet is located in auxiliary fascia console storage box.

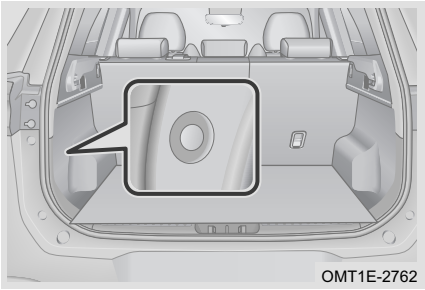
Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.


OMT1E-2760

For some models, power outlet is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

Rear Power Outlet (If Equipped)


OMT1E-2762

Rear power outlet is located on the left side of luggage compartment.

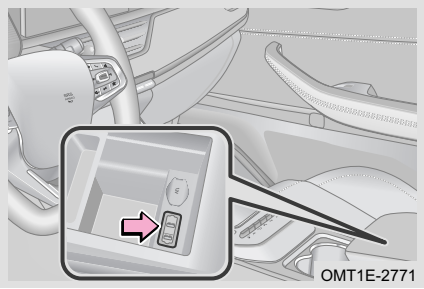
Power outlet can be used only when vehicle power is switched to ACC/ON mode.

⚠ CAUTION

- To prevent the fuse from being blown, do not use electrical equipment with high power (120 W or more).
- To prevent the battery from discharging, do not use the power outlet longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- Do not insert anything or allow any liquid to get into the outlet other than an appropriate plug. Failure to do so may cause electrical failure or short circuits.

USB Port

Front USB port (Type A)

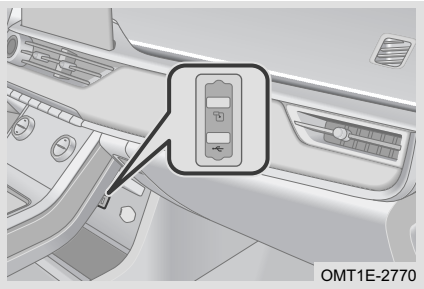


For some models, USB port is located in auxiliary fascia console storage box.

This port is used to connect mobile phone, ipad, U disc and other equipment to audio head unit.

Note: Only the right USB port supports phone-link.

Front USB port (Type B)

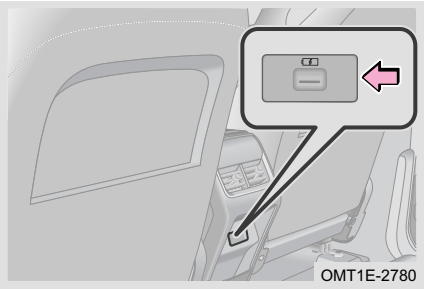


For some models, USB port is located on the front end of auxiliary fascia console.

This port is used to connect mobile phone, ipad, U disc and other equipment to audio head unit.

Note: Only the upper USB port supports phone-link.

Rear USB port

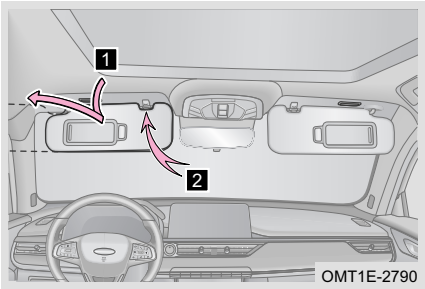


USB port is located under the rear air outlet of center armrest.

It can be used for charging the electrical equipment with low power, such as phone etc.

3-10.Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors

Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors



OMT1E-2790

Horizontally move the vanity mirror sliding plate to use the vanity mirror. For vehicle equipped with vanity mirror light, the corresponding vanity mirror light will come on when moving the vanity mirror sliding plate.

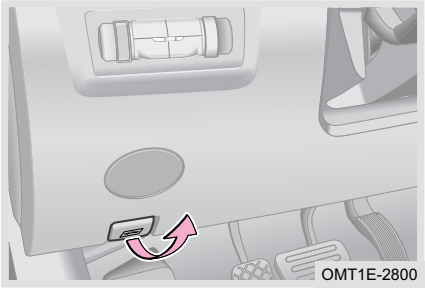
1 Flip the sun visor down

2 Detach the hook and turn it outward to shade sidelight

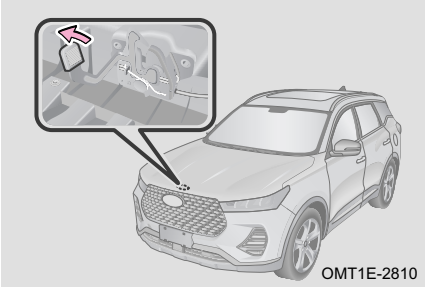
3-11.Hood

Hood

Open/close the hood


OMT1E-2800

Step 1: The hood will spring up slightly by pulling hood release lever;


OMT1E-2810

Step 2: Reach your hand to the center part of the hood front end, and contact with the auxiliary catch lever. Then push it to left and keep it in this position, and lift the hood at the same time;

Step 3: Lower the hood and close it until the latch is locked;

Step 4: After closing the hood, lift the hood lightly to check that hood is fully closed.

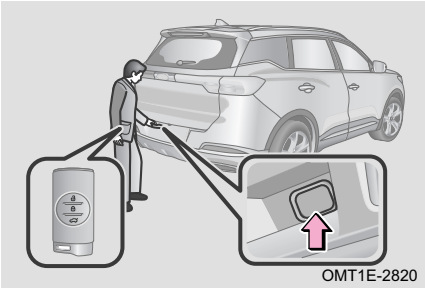
CAUTION

- Before closing the hood, check if you have not left any tools, rags etc. in the engine compartment.
- When closing hood, do not press it by hand, otherwise it may be deformed.
- Make sure that hood is closed before driving, otherwise accidents and personal injury may occur.

3-12.Back Door

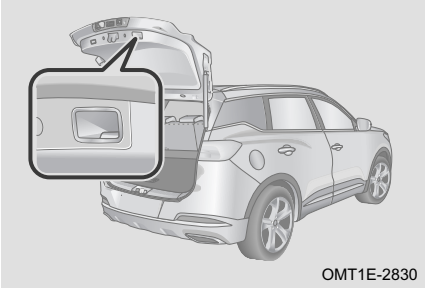
Back Door

Opening/closing back door


OMT1E-2820

With central lock unlocked, press back door switch to open back door.

With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key and press back door switch to open back door.


OMT1E-2830

Pull the back door assist handle down and release it before the back door is fully closed. Make sure the back door is fully closed before leaving the vehicle.

WARNING

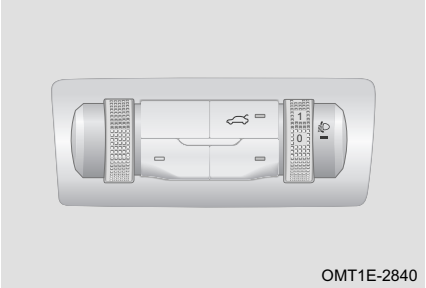
Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, it may result accidents and related parts may be damaged.

Power Back Door (If Equipped)

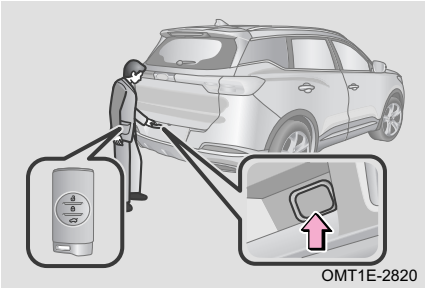
System introduction

For your convenience, power back door can be opened/closed in various ways, such as manually open/close, one button open/close, voice open/close, remote open/close (if equipped), sensing open, and also achieve height adjustment function.

Opening/closing back door


OMT1E-2840

While vehicle power is switched to OFF/ACC/ON mode, shift the lever P position and the vehicle is in deactivation mode, long press the power back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

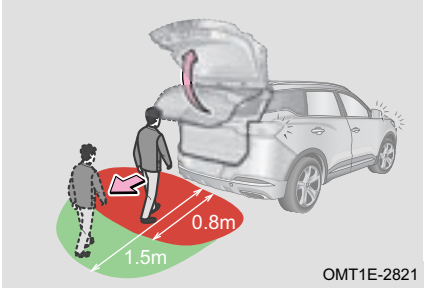

OMT1E-2820

Manual open/close: With central lock unlocked, press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Manual open/close: With central lock locked, approach to back of vehicle when carrying smart key and press back door switch, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

One-button open/close: While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode, long press back door opener button on smart key, turn signal lights will come on and power back door will be opened/closed.

Sensing open (If equipped)



OMT1E-2821

Step 1: While vehicle power is switched to OFF mode or vehicle is started remotely, four doors are closed;

Step 2: Approach to the back of vehicle within 0.8 m when carrying smart key on your person, the system automatically recognizes validity of smart key, after turn signal lights come on, take a step back, power back door opens.

READ

- For details about voice recognition function, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System".
- Smart key sensing back door open needs to be set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").
- Do not put smart key together with computer, cordless mouse, phone, etc. failure to do so may cause the power back door cannot sense open/close.
- Back door sensing open function is turned off after the vehicle is locked for 3 days, restarting the engine will restore the function.
- When any switch (such as power back door switch, power back door button, back door open button) is activated during the movement of the power back door, the back door will stop moving.

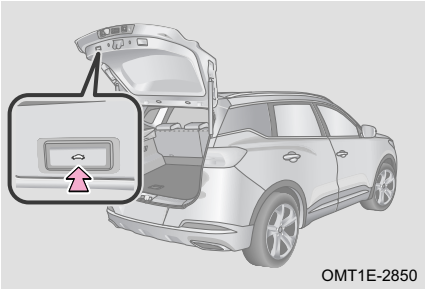
CAUTION

- If the battery cable is disconnected and reconnected, the power back door needs to be manually closed to locked position at a constant speed, and then press the power back door switch to open/close the power back door normally.
- When the power back door opens, do not pull electric support rod laterally, which may cause damage to related parts.
- When the power back door is opened to the highest position, it cannot be pushed or supported by hand to higher place, which may cause damage to related parts.
- Before opening power back door, be sure to note that there should be no debris, rear wall, etc. in the opening range, which could result in scratching back door.
- Before driving, make sure that back door is closed in place, otherwise it may cause accidents and damage to related parts.
- When closing power back door by hand, operate gently, do not operate with brute force, which may damage motor and module.
- When going uphill or downhill, due to change in the center of gravity, the power back door may not open or close. This is normal. Open or close it by hand.
- When the back door is abnormal, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- When closing the back door, make sure that nobody will be caught. If closing is interrupted, close it again.

WARNING

- Make sure that the back door is closed before driving, otherwise, it may result accidents and related parts may be damaged.
- Although the vehicle is equipped with jam protection function, do not activate jam protection function on purpose to avoid accidental injury.

Power back door button



When the power back door opens, press the button to close the power back door.

When the power back door is moving, press the button to suspend the action of the power back door.

After the power back door is opened, adjust it to your desire height; long press the button until the vehicle gives a light prompt, and the power back door opening height is set successfully.

READ

- Power back door opening height can also be set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").
- If the back door opening height is too low or too high, the back door opening height cannot be set.

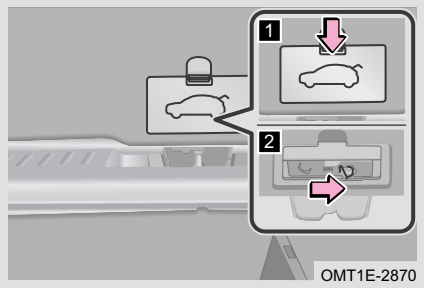
Power back door jam protection function

Positive jam protection: When power back door is opening, if it encounters resistance (such as wall, obstacle, etc.), the back door positive jam protection works to avoid vehicle damage.

Reverse jam protection: When power back door is closing, if it encounters resistance (such as children, luggage etc.), the back door reverse jam protection works to avoid child injury and vehicle damage.

Back Door Emergency Opening

Back door cannot be opened when battery is depleted or under similar conditions. In this case, the back door can be opened with back door emergency device switch.



Step 1: Stop the vehicle steadily as much as possible;

Step 2: Fold the rear seatback;

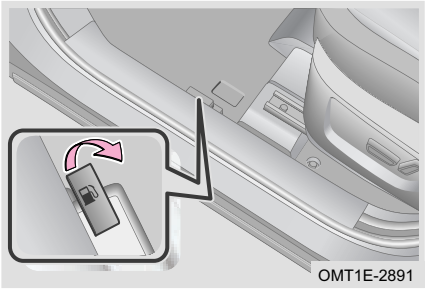
Step 3: Get in the rear of vehicle and open emergency device cover;

Step 4: Move the emergency device switch (white) to right with hand, release it, and then push the back door up to open it.

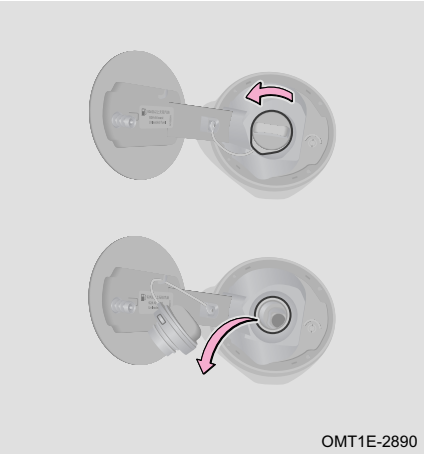
3-13.Fuel Tank Cap

Fuel Tank Cap

Manual Fuel Tank Cap (If equipped)



Step 1: Pull fuel tank cap opening handle and the fuel tank cap will pop up outward;



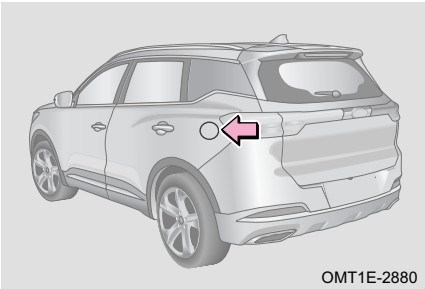
Step 2: Turn fuel filler cap counter-clockwise to remove it;

Step 3: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard;

Step 4: Close fuel tank cap.

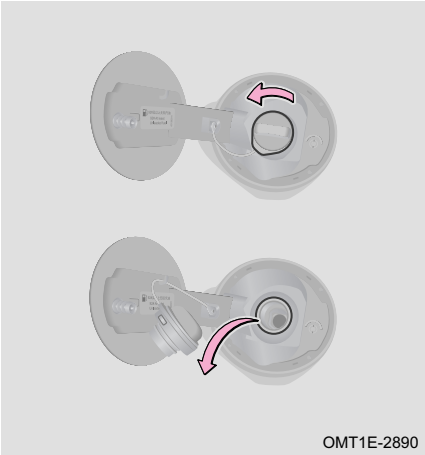
READ
Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, squirted fuel should be collected and disposed of by a professional.

Electric Fuel Tank Cap (If equipped)



Step 1: After the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, push center rear of fuel tank cap, the cap will pop up and slightly open to maximum angle.

CAUTION
Open/close fuel tank cap after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, otherwise, it may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.



Step 2: Turn fuel filler cap counter-clockwise to remove it;

Step 3: After refueling, turn fuel filler cap clockwise until a "click" sound is heard.

Step 4: Close fuel tank cap.

READ

Fuel may pollute environment. Therefore, squirted fuel should be collected and disposed of by a professional.

CAUTION

- A slight whooshing sound may be heard when the fuel tank cap is loosened. This is normal.
- Never add diesel to fuel tank.
- If fuel overflows during refueling, wipe it off immediately to avoid damage to vehicle paint surface.
- After fuel filler cap is tightened firmly, loose your hand and the cap will turn slightly in the opposite direction. This is normal.
- To prevent damage to the cap, apply force only in the direction of rotation. Do not pull or pay it.
- If the vehicle fortifying is not deactivated, never push fuel tank cap with a strong force as this may cause damage related components of fuel tank cap.
- When freezing at low temperature, after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, tap fuel tank cap and then fuel tank cap opens. It is normal phenomenon.
- During using, if fuel tank cap is not closed, after the vehicle fortifying is deactivated, close the cap again!

WARNING

- Before refueling, turn ENGINE START STOP switch off and close all doors and windows.
- Make sure that the fuel filler cap is tightened securely to prevent fuel spillage, causing an accident.
- Because gasoline is extremely flammable, smoking is prohibited when refueling, and there must be no other sparks or open flames.
- Do not remove the fuel filler cap quickly when opening it. In hot weather, if cap is removed suddenly, high-pressed fuel vapor may be ejected from the filler neck and cause personal injury.
- Do not inhale vaporized fuel, as the fuel contains substances that are harmful for the health.
- After exiting the vehicle and before opening the fuel tank cap, touch an unpainted metal surface to discharge any static electricity. It is important to discharge static electricity before refueling because sparks resulting from static electricity can cause fuel vapors to ignite while refueling.
- Do not attempt to continue to refuel after the fuel gun is automatically turned off! Otherwise, the fuel tank may be too full, causing fuel to overflow the fuel tank, which can easily cause fire, explosion and serious injury.

DRIVING VEHICLE

4-1. ENGINE START STOP Switch

Vehicle Power Mode 184
Electronic Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission) 185

4-2. Starting and Turning off Engine

Normal Starting and Turning off 186
Starting and Turning off in Emergency 188
Adaptive Engine Control System 188

4-3. Transmission

Manual Transmission 189
Automatic Transmission 191

4-4. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 196

4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 197
Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) 200
Vacuum Booster 201
Brake 202

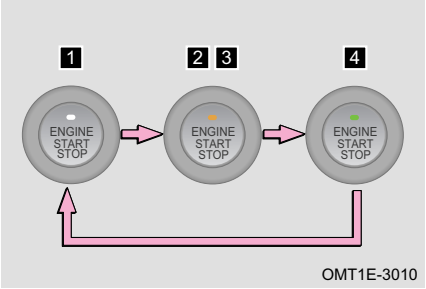
4-6. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS) 203
Modification and Disposal of Airbag System Components 210

4-1. ENGINE START STOP Switch

Vehicle Power Mode

When the system detects the legal smart key and the brake pedal is released, press the ENGINE START STOP switch to switch the power mode of vehicle (each time the ENGINE START STOP switch is pressed, the mode is switched once).



1 OFF mode (indicator does not come on): All electrical appliances turn off.

2 ACC mode (indicator comes on in amber): Part electrical appliances can be used.

3 ON mode (indicator comes on in amber): All electrical appliances can be used.

4 START mode (indicator comes on in green): When vehicle power source is turned to ACC/ON mode, depress the brake pedal and transmission gear is in P (vehicle with automatic transmission) or depress the clutch pedal and transmission gear is in neutral (vehicle with manual transmission). At the same time, the indicator comes on in green, indicating that the power of vehicle is switched to START mode and the engine can be started by pressing the ENGINE START STOP switch.

READ

If ENGINE START STOP switch is not pressed properly, vehicle power mode can not be switched or engine may be not started.

CAUTION

- When engine is not running, switch the vehicle power mode to OFF mode to prevent the battery from discharging.
- When engine is running, if smart key is removed, engine will not turn off automatically, anti-theft horn sounds 6 times and meter displays "Smart Key Not Detected".
- When engine is running, if shift lever is shifted to R/N/D, turn off the engine and vehicle power will be switched to ACC mode other than OFF mode. Shift the lever to P, vehicle power will be switched to ON mode, and press ENGINE START STOP switch again to switch it to OFF mode.

Auto power off function

When engine is not running, if vehicle power is switched to ON mode for 1 hour or more, vehicle power will be automatically switched to OFF mode (shift lever of vehicle with automatic transmission is shifted into P), this function cannot completely prevent battery from being discharged.

Electronic Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission)

Vehicle power switches to OFF mode with vehicle speed of 0 and speed of 0, electronic steering column lock is locked.

Smart key is in the vehicle, press ENGINE START STOP switch to switch vehicle power to ACC/ON mode, electronic steering column lock unlocks automatically.

In some cases, such as when the vehicle is parked on a slope, there is a significant stress between lock pin and steering column and the lock pin may be stuck. At this time, if the electronic steering column lock cannot be unlocked successfully, please follow the prompt message of instrument cluster "Electronic steering column lock is stuck, please turn the steering wheel to start again" for relevant operations.

READ

- If the electronic steering column lock cannot be unlocked successfully, and engine cannot be started, please contact Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- If the electronic steering column lock cannot be unlocked, please try more times, shake the steering wheel for several times, and then press the ENGINE START STOP switch to unlock. Do not violently turn the steering wheel.

CAUTION

Vehicle power is switched from ON to OFF mode, the electronic steering column lock cannot be locked if there is no immediate fortifying or the fortifying is not successful. To active electric steering column lock function, vehicle speed is more than 5 km/h, then stop vehicle and switch vehicle power to OFF mode, realizing vehicle anti-theft.

4-2. Starting and Turning off Engine

Normal Starting and Turning off

Before starting engine

Step 1: Check around the vehicle before getting in;

Step 2: Adjust seat position, seatback angle, head restraint height and steering wheel angle;

Step 3: Adjust angles of the inside and outside rear view mirrors;

Step 4: Turn off any unnecessary lights and electrical appliances;

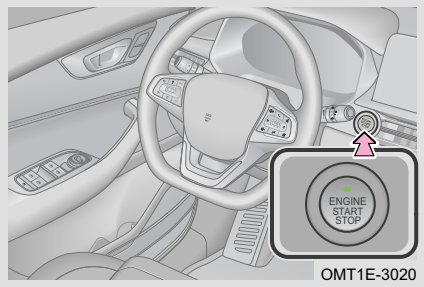
Step 5: Fasten the seat belts;

Step 6: Confirm that the parking brake is applied;

Step 7: Shift the shift lever to P (vehicle with automatic transmission) or N (vehicle with manual transmission);

Step 8: Vehicle power switches to ON mode, check if malfunction indicator and other indicators on meter are normal; if they are abnormal, contact Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.

Starting engine



OMT1E-3020

Smart key is carried on body or put it into vehicle, and it can be detected normally:

Step 1: Shift the shift lever to P (vehicle with automatic transmission) or N (vehicle with manual transmission);

Step 2: Vehicle power switches to ACC/ON mode, depress brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission), and indicator comes on in green at the same time;

Step 3: Press ENGINE START STOP switch to start the engine.

READ
When operating ENGINE START STOP switch, one short, firm press is enough.

After starting engine

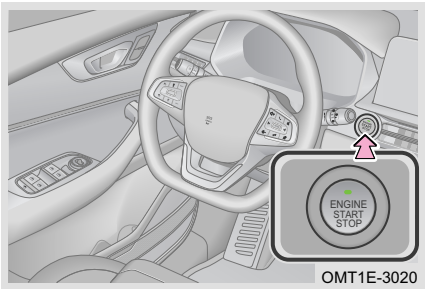
Engine idle speed is controlled by electrical control system. When engine is started, it runs at a higher speed to warm. This is normal. After the engine temperature increases, engine speed will automatically decrease to normal starting speed. If the speed cannot decrease to normal speed automatically, contact Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.

WARNING

Engine exhaust gas contains harmful substance which may lead to a serious health hazard when inhaled. To avoid inhaling exhaust gas, following measures should be taken:

- Do not run the engine for a long time in an unventilated area, such as in a garage, etc.
- When running engine in a ventilated area, someone should control engine in vehicle, switch air conditioning to outer circulation, and set high blower speed.

Turning off engine



OMT1E-3020

Step 1: Stop the vehicle and apply parking brake;

Step 2: Shift the shift lever to P (vehicle with automatic transmission) or N (vehicle with manual transmission);

Step 3: Press the ENGINE START STOP switch;

Step 4: Check that engine is turned off.

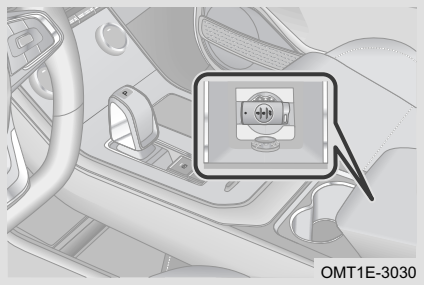
CAUTION

- Do not depress accelerator pedal before engine is turned off.
- After driving at a high speed for a long time, engine temperature will be high. Do not turn off engine immediately when stopping vehicle. Allow the engine to idle for several minutes, and then turn off engine after its temperature drops. Otherwise, engine may be damaged.

Starting and Turning off in Emergency

Starting engine in emergency

When smart key battery is low or signal is seriously interfered, engine start stop function will not work normally. In this case, start engine according to following steps:



Step 1: Lay smart key in auxiliary fascia console armrest box (as shown in figure) with front side facing up. At this time, do not depress brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission);

Step 2: Vehicle power switches to ACC/ON mode, depress brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission), and indicator comes on in green at the same time;

Step 3: Press ENGINE START STOP switch to start the engine.

For vehicle with automatic transmission, vehicle power switches to ACC mode, when it cannot be started by pressing brake pedal, long press ENGINE START STOP switch for 15 seconds or more, system will ignore brake pedal signal and engine also can start at the same time (It is not recommended to use this function to start driving again unless special circumstances occur).

Turning off engine in emergency

When vehicle systems are normal during traveling, if engine has to be stopped in case of an emergency, perform as follows:

Method 1: Shortly and continuously press ENGINE START STOP switch 3 times or more within 2 seconds.

Method 2: Press and hold ENGINE START STOP switch for 3 seconds or more.

Adaptive Engine Control System

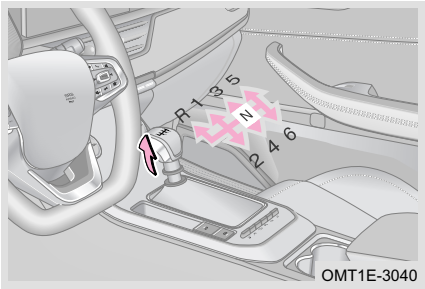
If the battery terminal is removed and reconnected, the vehicle power is switched to ON mode, and vehicle power will be switched to OFF mode after waiting for 15 s before starting the engine.

Abnormal phenomena (such as, engine shaking or unsmooth starting off) may occur in early driving stage. This is caused due to the engine control system relearns and adapts engine, and it is normal.

4-3. Transmission

Manual Transmission

Manual transmission (6MT) is composed of six forward gears and a reverse gear.



OMT1E-3040

Driving methods

Step 1: Press the clutch pedal and brake pedal completely, then shift the shift lever into proper gear;

Step 2: Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release clutch pedal and brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly.

READ

Manual transmission has a reverse lock device, first lift the reverse lock device up and then push the shift lever, it shifts to reverse gear.

CAUTION

- When driving downhill or turning, always use a low gear and never coast with N.
- Do not skip a gear when shifting from low to high gear.
- Do not keep your foot on the clutch pedal while driving to avoid unnecessary wear to clutch.
- Before reversing operation, first stop the vehicle steadily, completely depress the clutch pedal and wait for about 3 seconds before shifting to reverse gear, in order to prevent the transmission gear from meshing poorly and generating noise.
- During reversing, first stop the vehicle steadily, completely depress the clutch pedal and wait for about 3 seconds before shifting to reverse gear, which can efficiently reduce tooth broken when shifting to reverse position.
- It is strictly prohibited to use the operation method of "one push and one release" when operating select/shift lever. Shift lever should always be held by hand to reduce the wear of lock ring of synchronizer.
- Do not put your hand on the shift lever when it is not necessary to operate select/shift lever, otherwise it will cause premature wear of the shift fork.
- Start your vehicle at the 1st gear. When shifting, fully depress the clutch pedal to disengage transmission from engine power completely, and move the shift lever quickly.
- If abnormal phenomena are found in transmission, such as abnormal noises and heavy operation etc., immediately stop the vehicle to a safe place away from traffic road, and contact Chery authorized service station timely for inspection and repair, continue to drive after troubleshooting.

Downshifting

1. Downshift in sequence without skipping gears.
2. Shift down when driving down steep slopes for safety.
3. Shift down properly when starting to accelerate again for better acceleration.

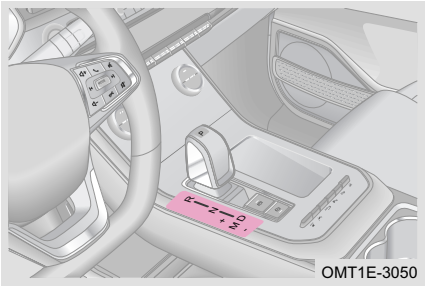
WARNING

Do not downshift for additional engine braking on a slippery surface. Otherwise, drive wheels could lose their traction, which could cause the wheels to slip, resulting in a loss of vehicle control.

Automatic Transmission

The automatic transmission (CVT) belongs to the electronically controlled hydraulic automatic transmission with manual and automatic shift modes.

The automatic transmission (7DCT) belongs to the electronically controlled automatic transmission with manual and automatic shifting modes.



OMT1E-3050

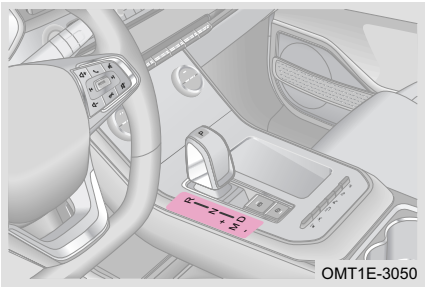
Driving methods

Step 1: Press the brake pedal completely, then shift the shift lever from P to D;

Step 2: Release the parking brake manually or automatically and release the brake pedal to drive the vehicle slowly.

READ
Press P button on shift lever to shift to P. Push the shift lever forward and backward to shift to other positions (R, N, D).

Gear position introduction



OMT1E-3050

During the operation, the driver can choose the automatic mode (P, R, N, D) and the manual mode M (+, -). The selected gear position will display the corresponding gear information on the information display area in instrument cluster.

Automatic mode: When the transmission gear is in D, vehicle upshift and downshift automatically according to speed. All are done without manual intervention.

Manual mode: When the transmission gear is in D, push to left to enter manual mode M (+, -), push forward to upshift by one gear and push backward to downshift by one gear.

The following information will help you understand purpose and operation procedures of different gears to make a right choice according to actual demand during operation.

Gear Range		Function
P (Park)		This is park gear. Drive wheels are mechanically locked. Engine can be started.
R (Reverse)		This is a reverse position. Back-up lights will come on and parking radar system will operate.
N (Neutral)		This is a neutral position. It is used for short time idling stop.
D (Forward Drive)		This is a forward driving position. Automatically shifts up and down among forward drive gears according to engine load and vehicle speed.
Manual mode M	+	Push shift lever toward + once, transmission will raise one gear.
	-	Push shift lever toward - once, transmission will lower one gear.

CAUTION

- In manual mode, when the speed does not change, Kick-down operation is allowed, and automatic up-shifting is not allowed.
- Never shift in P position when the vehicle is not stopped steadily. This may lead to abnormal sound or damage to the transmission.
- When engine stalls, do not coast vehicle in N. Otherwise, the transmission will be damaged.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of D while the vehicle is moving forward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- Do not shift the shift lever out of R while the vehicle is moving backward. Otherwise, the transmission may be damaged seriously.
- When shifting the shift lever out of P, it is necessary to depress the brake pedal first to stop the vehicle steadily, and then perform shifting among each gear position. Otherwise shifting mechanism will be damaged.
- When vehicle malfunctions occur due to insufficient battery, even depress brake pedal, shifting out from P is impossible. Contact the Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.
- In manual mode, when engine speed reaches to the highest speed, it shifts up automatically; when engine speed is excessively low, it shifts down automatically; when vehicle brakes and slows down, it shifts down automatically.
- In manual mode, up-shifting and down-shifting operations must be performed by pushing shift lever according to engine speed and vehicle speed. If the requirements are not met, the transmission will not perform the gear shifting operation.
- When the vehicle is parked on a slope, the parking brake must be applied first, and then the shift lever is shifted into P. After starting on a slope, first shift the shift lever out of P, then release parking brake for driving.

WARNING

- Never tow the vehicle for a long distance or at high speed. Raise drive wheels or disconnect propeller shaft when towing.
- When the transmission is in N, make sure parking brake is applied or brake pedal is depressed, otherwise an accident may occur.

Shift to P automatically (CVT)

When vehicle speed is not higher than 1 km/h, transmission is in R or D, driver side door is opened and brake pedal is not depressed, it will shift to P automatically. The door cannot be closed normally due to deformation of driver side door. When the speed is more than 1 km/h, it will be automatically shift to N. When the speed is not more than 1 km/h, it will be automatically shift to P. Contact Chery authorized service station immediately for inspection and repair.

Shift to P automatically (7 DCT)

When vehicle stops with speed higher than 15 km/h, transmission is in R or D, driver side door is opened and brake pedal is not depressed, it will shift to P automatically. If the door cannot be closed due to damage to driver side door, the driver can automatically shift into P in the system, and then shift the shift lever to R or D, and the vehicle will run normally.

Transmission self-learning operation specification (7 DCT)

If the battery is disconnected immediately after the ENGINE START STOP switch is switched to OFF mode, gear position loss will occur after reconnecting the battery, at this time, it is necessary to perform shift drum and clutch position self-learning, then vehicle can be driven normally.

Step 1: Connect battery and turn vehicle power to ON mode;

Step 2: Firmly depress brake pedal and hold for 30 seconds or more until P is displayed in instrument cluster, at this time, transmission self-learning operation is completed;

Step 3: If P is not displayed, disconnect battery negative and repeat steps 1 and 2 until P is displayed in instrument cluster.

READ
It is recommended to go to the Chery authorized service station to be operated by after-sales personnel.

Transmission alarm text display

OMT1E-3060

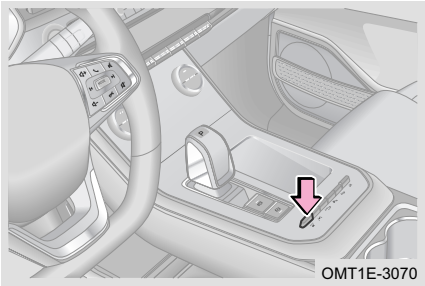
When the transmission temperature is high, the meter alarm text message is "High transmission temperature, stop at a safe place".

When the transmission temperature is overheated, the meter alarm text message is "Gearbox Over Heat, Please Park In A Safe Place For about 5 Minutes".

CAUTION

After the vehicle is cooled, restart the vehicle. If the vehicle alarm text prompt is still in alarm state, please immediately turn off engine and contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Driving mode



If NORMAL mode is not equipped, system is ECO mode by default when engine starts. Press drive mode switch, switch between SPORT mode and ECO mode circularly. You can choose according to different road conditions.

If NORMAL mode is equipped, system is NORMAL mode by default when engine starts. Press drive mode switch, switch between NORMAL mode, SPORT mode and ECO mode circularly. You can choose according to different road conditions.

Improve vehicle fuel economy in ECO mode; Improve vehicle handling, controllability and power performance in SPORT mode.

READ

- When the driving mode is switched, the instrument cluster switches the corresponding theme color.
- Adaptive cruise system (ACC) is used for gentle acceleration in ECO mode, while adaptive cruise system (ACC) is used for faster acceleration in SPORT mode.

Fail-safe mode

When malfunction occurs in transmission system, fail-safe mode will be automatically activated, at the same time yellow indicator "" on instrument cluster comes on; transmission cannot operate normally, and vehicle will slow down and be driven at low speed.

CAUTION

Long distance driving is not allowed in fail-safe mode. Otherwise, transmission may damage, contact the Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

4-4. Steering System

Electric Power Steering System (EPS)

Introduction

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) uses torque generated by motor as power source of steering system, instead of assisting method using in general vehicle, that is, hydraulic pump is driven by engine.

OMT1E-3080

If the vehicle battery is powered off and reconnecting or starting, due to the initialization of electric steering system angle, the yellow indicator "" on instrument cluster flashes, turn the steering wheel left and right to the limit position to complete the angle reset, and the yellow indicator "" on instrument cluster turns off.

Electric power steering system (EPS) indicator

When there is fault in electric power steering system (EPS), yellow indicator "" on instrument cluster comes on.

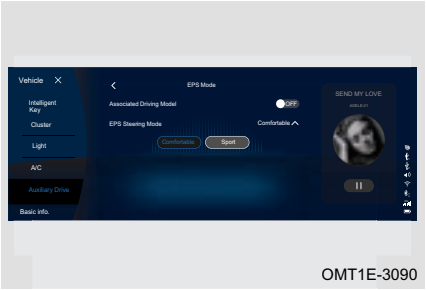
CAUTION

- Frequent handling and rotation of steering wheel over long periods of time may damage the mechanism in the electric power steering system (EPS).
- Never rotate the steering wheel frequently and rapidly from left to right in the parking idling state to prevent the system from overheating. If the system overheats, heavy steering will occur, which is normal. Stop rotating the steering wheel and switch the vehicle power to OFF/ACC mode until the system cools down.

WARNING

After electric power steering system (EPS) is disabled, although the vehicle still has the conventional steering capability, it should be driven with caution. At this time, please go to the Chery authorized service station for maintenance as soon as possible.

Power steering mode



OMT1E-3090

Electric power steering system (EPS) is equipped with two steering modes (SPORT/COMFORT). The default steering mode is comfort mode when the vehicle first works. Compared with the comfortable mode, steering power of sport mode is reduced and the hand feels calm.

READ

- The electric power steering mode can be associated with the driving mode (if equipped). After the association, the steering force is the movement in the vehicle SPORT mode, while the steering force is the comfort in the vehicle ECO and NORMAL modes (if equipped). After disassociation, steering force can be set to SPORT/COMFORT separately.
- The electric steering mode should be set on audio system (Refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System" for details).

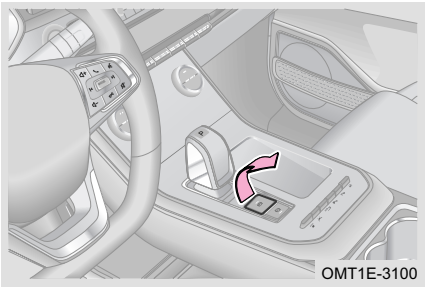
4-5. Brake System

Electric Parking Brake System (EPB)

Introduction

Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system is a technology that integrates temporary braking during driving and long-time braking after stopping, and implements parking brake by electronic control. This technology replaces the traditional handbrake.

Using method


OMT1E-3100

■ Applying parking brake manually

With vehicle power switches to ON mode, or engine starts and vehicle stationary, when pulling up the electric parking brake button, red indicator "Ⓟ" on instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator will come on, indicating parking brake function has been turned on.

Vehicle power switches to OFF mode, and parking brake function can be applied automatically by Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system.

■ Releasing parking brake manually

With engine starts or vehicle power switches to ON mode, depress the brake pedal and press electric parking brake button manually, red indicator "Ⓟ" on instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator will turn off, indicating parking brake function has been released.

■ Releasing parking brake automatically

Fasten driver's seat belt and close driver side door. Depress accelerator pedal with shift lever in D or R on flat road to release electric parking brake automatically, and red indicator "Ⓟ" on instrument cluster goes off.

When vehicle stops on a slope, to shift to D or R, depress accelerator pedal harder. When driving force is greater than slipping force, auto hold can release automatically.

READ

When towing vehicle, it is necessary to release parking brake, and transmission is in neutral.

CAUTION

- Electric Parking Brake (EPB) system and Auto Parking system (AUTO HOLD) can not be used when vehicle battery is loss. Jumper cables can be used to start the engine (refer to "6-2. Vehicle Distress Handling" for details).
- While depressing brake pedal and releasing or applying parking brake, brake pedal may push slightly up or down, simply by pressing the brake tightly.
- When performing automatic releasing of electric parking brake, fasten the driver's seat belt and close the driver side door. Failure to do so may cause the automatic releasing conditions of parking brake cannot be satisfied.
- When enabling and releasing electric parking brake, "whooshing" sound may be heard from rear part of vehicle. This is the working sound emitted by parking brake. It is normal and take it easy.
- If vehicle coasts after stopping within a short period, system will increase parking brake force automatically to hold it for safety. When brake force increasing, system makes operation sound. This is normal.
- Engine starts or the vehicle power switches to ON mode, when parking brake can not be released manually by depressing brake pedal, you can depress accelerator pedal and press the electric parking brake button to release parking brake, it is only used when parking brake can not be released manually by depressing brake pedal, pay attention to safety when using. Contact the Chery authorized service station for maintenance as soon as possible.

WARNING

To avoid vehicle accident movement, when stopping or leaving vehicle, and after electric parking brake (EPB) system operates, red indicator "Ⓟ" on instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator turn off after they come on for a certain time, check whether red indicator "Ⓟ" on instrument cluster and electric parking brake button indicator come on to ensure electric parking brake is properly applied.

Emergency braking function

If foot brake fails, pull up the electric parking brake button continuously to forcibly apply brake by parking brake. In this process, red indicator "Ⓟ" on instrument cluster blinks. Release the button to exit emergency braking.

WARNING

- When emergency braking function is activated, it will drone. This is normal.
- When applying emergency braking, electric parking brake will apply brake at constant deceleration which is deviated from driver's desired deceleration and braking distance will be different.
- Use this function cautiously during normal driving. When driving, passengers should not touch button accidentally. Otherwise, it may cause an accident.
- When foot brake fails or brake pedal is blocked, emergency braking function can be used in an emergency. Electronic stability control system (ESP) and its components cannot exceed road traction physical limit, turning on emergency braking function when driving on curved road, dangerous road, heavy traffic road or in severe weather may lead in drifting, sideslipping or pulling over, be careful not to cause an accident.

Electric parking emergency releasing

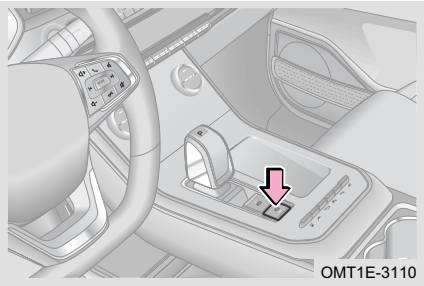
When electric parking brake (EPB) system operates, press electric parking brake button and vehicle power switches to OFF mode, electric parking is released in emergency. It is recommended to use the electronic parking system only in rescue trailers or rare situations.

Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD)

Introduction

Automatic parking system (AUTO HOLD) is used to prevent vehicle from rolling when vehicle is stationary and starts off.

Using method



■ Auto hold operation conditions

Engine is started, driver door is closed properly and driver seat belt is fastened.

■ Turning on auto hold function

When auto hold conditions are met, press auto hold button, indicator on button comes on, indicating that vehicle has turned on auto hold function.

■ Activating auto hold

When auto hold function is turned on, depress brake pedal, vehicle changes to stationary state from movement, then auto hold function is activated, green indicator "Ⓟ" or "Ⓐ" on instrument cluster comes on.

Depress brake pedal when vehicle is stationary, and the automatic parking function is turned on at the same time and the condition of automatic parking is met, then auto hold function is activated, green indicator "Ⓟ" or "Ⓐ" on instrument cluster comes on.

■ Turning off auto hold

When the auto parking function is turned on, press the auto parking button to turn off auto hold function. The indicator on the auto parking button turns off, indicating that the vehicle has exited the auto hold function.

When auto hold function is activated, press auto hold button to turn off auto hold function, green indicator "Ⓟ" or "Ⓐ" on instrument cluster and indicator on button turn off, indicating that vehicle has exited auto hold function and switched to parking brake function.

Auto hold release function:

Way to release auto hold is the same as that of electrical park brake, including manual release and automatic release.

READ
According to the configuration of the vehicle, the automatic parking system (AUTO HOLD) indicator displays different.

CAUTION

- Turn off auto hold function before driving into wash room.
- Always park vehicle correctly according to safety regulations and take care to avoid hurt yourself and pedestrians.
- If accelerator pedal is depressed very slowly, auto hold release delays. This is normal.
- After starting the engine, the automatic parking system cannot be entered if driver side seat belt is not fastened or driver side door is not closed.
- When auto hold function is activated, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt, auto hold will switch to electrical parking.
- For vehicle with manual transmission, depress clutch pedal fully, shift to D/R and depress accelerator pedal to release. If driving on uphill road, it is recommended to depress accelerator pedal in half-linkage condition for uphill starting.
- After auto hold is enabled, the automatic parking system will automatically stop the vehicle from the state of motion to a complete stop by braking, but the transmission gear is still in D or R. It is recommended to shift to N for a short time and shift to P for a long time.
- When auto hold function is enabled, open driver side door or unfasten driver side seat belt to exit auto hold function, close the door or fasten the belt again to activate the function.

WARNING

To avoid vehicle accidentally moving, in the state of auto hold, confirm shift position before you depressing accelerator pedal to start.

Vacuum Booster

The vacuum booster is controlled by engine vacuum and it works only when the engine is running. Therefore, do not coast your vehicle with engine off.

WARNING

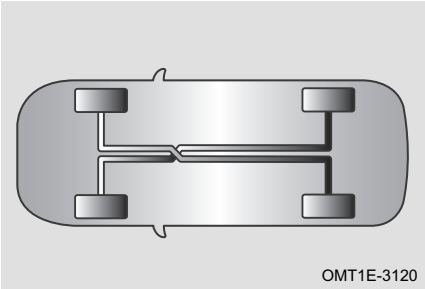
Do not coast your vehicle with engine off while driving downhill. For better braking efficiency, downshift to a low gear before driving downhill.

If the vacuum booster does not work because vehicle is being towed or malfunctioning, brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual to compensate booster braking effect.

Under the condition of normal temperature, special warm working condition of engine idle speed state within 15 seconds after vehicle starts (the temperature is lower and the time is longer), in order to quickly heat activation three-way catalysts, improve waste gas conversion efficiency, at the same time, the con-

dition is helpful to the vehicles for parking for a long time (such as overnight), restore to build vacuum degree of brake vacuum booster, in order to achieve the optimal vehicle, therefore you are advised to develop a launch vehicle should at least keep the idle running after 15 s driving habits.

Brake



Brake system adopts X type dual circuit brake system. This system is a hydraulic system which has two independent sub systems. If one of the sub systems does not work, the other can still achieve brake function. However, the brake pedal should be depressed more firmly than usual and the braking distance will increase. In addition, brake system malfunction indicator comes on.

WARNING

Do not drive vehicle under conditions in which only one brake system works. Please contact Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

Brake system indicator

When there is fault in brake system, red indicator "(!)"on instrument cluster comes on.

WARNING

When there is fault in brake system, check the brake fluid level, add brake fluid when it is lower than MIN line. If the cause cannot be determined, please contact Chery authorized service station as soon as possible.

Precautions for brake system

Be sure to read the following precautions when using the brake system:

1. If there is a continuous shaking or vibration to the steering wheel while braking, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.
2. When driving downhill, shift to a low gear to make full use of engine braking effect and avoid continuous use of brakes. Failure to do so may cause the brakes to overheat and braking distance will become longer, and the brakes may even temporarily lose its effectiveness in a serious case.
3. It is normal that brake system makes an operation sound sometimes. But, if metal-friction or whistling sounds for a long time, brake linings may be seriously worn. Contact the authorized service station for replacement immediately.

4. New brake lining requires a break-in period to achieve optimum braking effect. Braking effect in the first 200 km is not optimal. In this case, depress brake pedal more firmly to compensate braking effect.
5. A wet brake may cause abnormal vehicle deceleration or pull to one side when braking. Depress brake pedal slightly to test effectiveness of brakes. After driving through deep water, keep a safe vehicle speed and depress brake pedal slightly until braking function is restored.
6. Wear condition of brake lining largely depends on its working conditions and driving style. For vehicles mainly used in city traffic, frequent starting and stopping will make working condition of brake lining worsen. Therefore, visit Chery authorized service station according to specified maintenance mileage to check thickness of brake linings or replace it as needed.

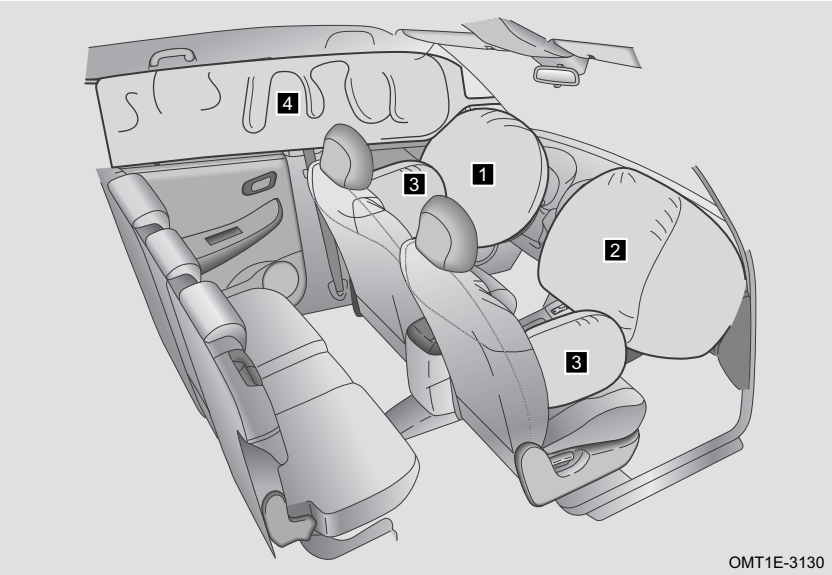
4-6. Airbag (SRS)

Airbag (SRS)

Introduction

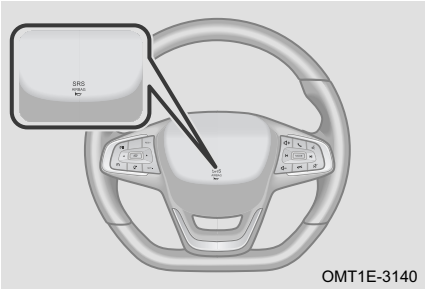
In severe frontal/side collision, when deployment conditions are met, the airbags deploy and work together with seat belts to protect occupants in vehicle. Airbags can distribute impact force more evenly to upper parts of occupants' body, so their body move slowly even stop, thus reducing the risk of occupants and driver injury.

Airbag position



1 Driver airbag
2 Front passenger airbag
3 Seat side airbag (if equipped)
4 Curtain shield airbag (if equipped)

■ Driver airbag



OMT1E-3140

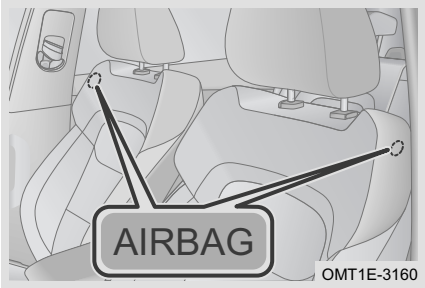
When driver airbag is triggered, the airbag cover will be opened from steering wheel and the airbag deploys.

■ Front passenger airbag

OMT1E-3150

When front passenger airbag is triggered, the airbag cover will be opened from instrument panel and the airbag deploys.

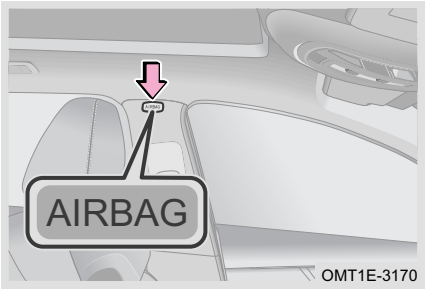
■ Front seat side airbag (if equipped)



OMT1E-3160

When vehicle is subjected to side collision and deployment conditions are met, front seat side airbag of impacted side deploys. Besides seat belt, front seat side airbag is a kind of device that can provide more protection for driver and front passenger.

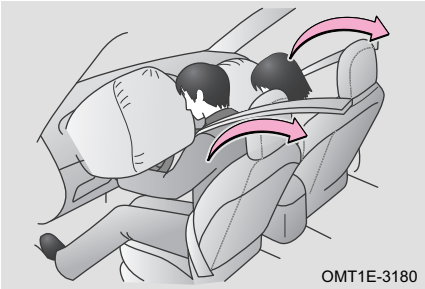
■ Curtain shield airbag (if equipped)



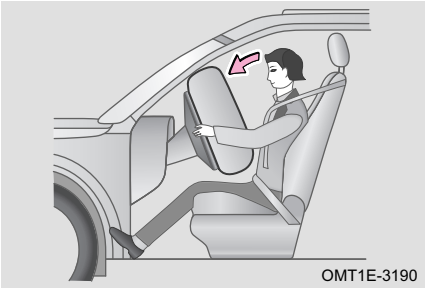
OMT1E-3170

When vehicle is subjected to side collision and deployment conditions are met, curtain shield airbag can provide head protection for passengers sitting on front seat and rear outside seat of impacted side, reducing risk of injury.

Using airbag correctly


OMT1E-3180

In a event of a severe frontal collision, driver airbag and front passenger airbag work together with the seat belt to help reduce injuries to the head or chest of driver and front passenger caused by hitting the interior component. The front passenger airbag may be activated even there is no passenger in the front seat.

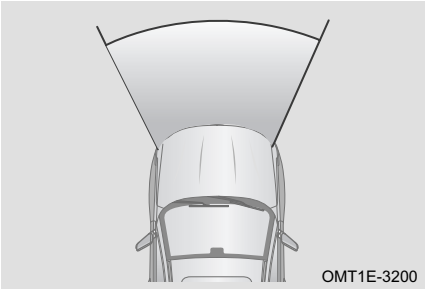

OMT1E-3190

The airbag works together with seat belt to protect safety of driver and passengers. However, airbag is not a substitute for seat belt. In addition, the airbag will deploy only when the collision degree of vehicle reaches the design condition. In some collisions, the seat belt is the only protective device. Wearing a seat belt during a collision can help reduce the risk of hitting objects inside the vehicle or being thrown out of the vehicle, and effectively protect the occupants and drivers. Therefore all persons in vehicle should wear seat belts correctly.

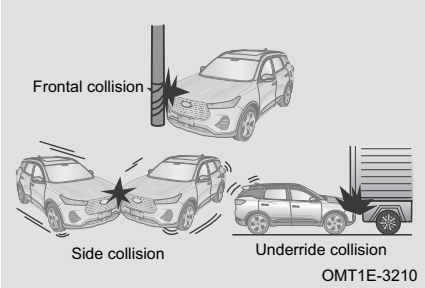
A considerable force will be generated at the moment the airbag inflates, in order to avoid serious injury or death, never get too close to the airbag, such as sitting on the edge of the seat or tilting the body forward. Under the premise of ensuring driving comfort, the driver should sit back as far as the passengers.

Airbags and seat belts can provide protection for adults and older children but are not designed to protect infants and young children. Refer to "Child Restraint System" in this section for details.

Airbag operating conditions



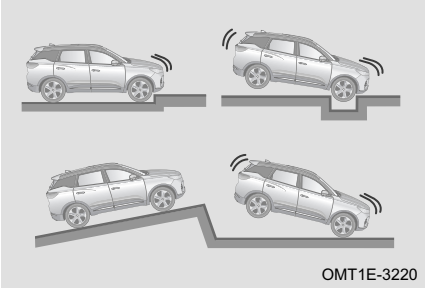
Operating conditions: In general, in a event of frontal collision, the driver airbag and front passenger airbag will deploy if the deceleration of vehicle exceeds the designed threshold level.



The driver airbag and front passenger airbag will deploy if the severity of the frontal impact is above the designed threshold level, comparable to a certain speed collision when the vehicle impacts straight into a fixed barrier that does not move or deform.

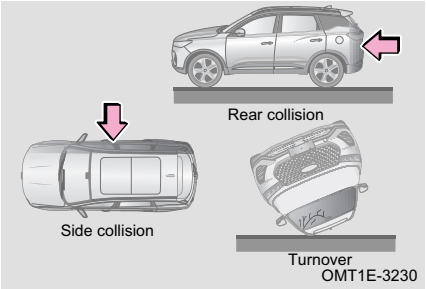
The driver airbag and front passenger airbag may not deploy if the front of vehicle hits a telegraph pole slightly, goes under a truck, or inclined side collision.

■ Conditions under which airbag may deploy other than a collision

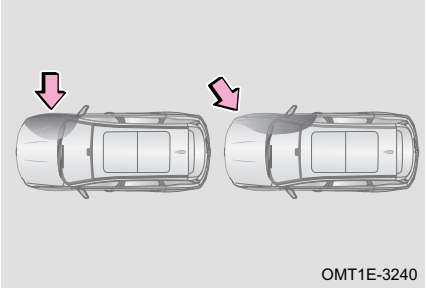


Driver airbag and front passenger airbag may also deploy if a serious impact occurs to the underside of your vehicle.

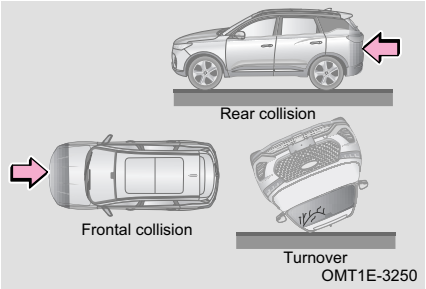
■ Conditions under which airbag may not deploy other than a collision



Driver airbag and front passenger airbag may not deploy generally if the vehicle is subjected to a side or rear collision, turnover or low speed frontal collision.



Front side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not deploy if the vehicle is subjected to a collision from side other than passenger compartment or a side collision at certain angles to body.



Front side airbag and curtain shield airbag may not deploy generally if the vehicle is subjected to a front or rear collision, turnover or low speed side collision.

⚠ WARNING

- When cleaning front seat, do not permeate any fluid into seat, front side airbag will be wet, doing so may cause the front seat side airbag to fail.
- The seat cover should not block seat side airbag, as in the event of an accident, the seat side airbag will not pop up after inflating, which will reduce protection for passengers.

Airbag indicator

When there is fault in airbag system, red indicator " "on instrument cluster comes on.

Precautions for airbag

After the airbag is inflated, the vehicle automatically unlocks doors, illuminates interior lights, and turns on hazard warning lights. The airbag will deflate quickly after it is inflated. Some parts of the airbag module may generate heat. Please do not touch any relevant parts at this time. The exhaust hole of deflated airbag will also release some smoke and dust. For people with asthma or other respiratory problems, respiratory system could be stimulated. Therefore, all people in vehicle should get off as soon as possible, or open windows to breathe fresh air and seek medical treatment if necessary.

If the areas where the airbags are stored, such as the steering wheel and instrument panel are damaged or cracked, please go to Chery authorized service station for replacement as soon as possible.

Always keep airbag inflation path clear. It is forbidden to place anything (mobile phone, etc.) between the occupant and the airbag. It is forbidden to fix or place any object on or near the airbag cover. If there is an object between occupant and airbag, the airbag may not deploy according to design path, or the airbag may push object to occupant's, which could result in death or serious injury.

Do not sit on the edge of the seat or lean against the dashboard.

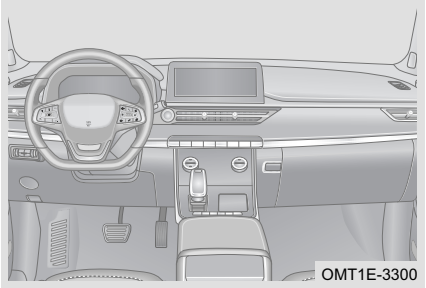
OMT1E-3280

Do not allow a child to stand in front of the front passenger airbag unit or sit on the knees of front passenger.

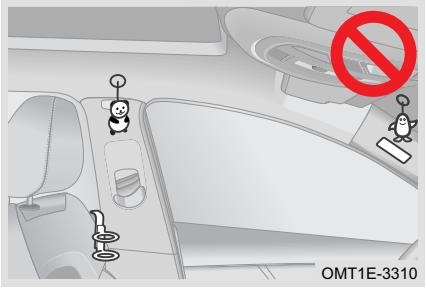
OMT1E-3290

Do not lean against the door, A pillar, B pillar or C pillar.

Do not allow anyone to kneel on the passenger seat toward the door or put their head or hands outside the vehicle.


OMT1E-3300

Do not attach anything to or lean anything against the areas such as the instrument panel, steering wheel and lower portion of the instrument panel. These items can become projectiles when driver airbag or front passenger airbag deploys.


OMT1E-3310

Do not attach anything to areas such as the door, windshield glass, side door glass, A pillar, B pillar, C pillar, roof side rail and assist grip.

Do not strike or apply excessive force to the area of airbag components. Doing so can cause the airbags to malfunction.

Modification and Disposal of Airbag System Components

Do not dispose the vehicle or operate the following components without permission of the Chery authorized service station, otherwise accidents and personal injuries may occur:

1. Modification of vehicle suspension system.
2. Modification of vehicle front bumper, etc.
3. Installation, removal, disassembly and repair of airbags.
4. Repair, modification, removal or replacement of steering wheel, instrument cluster, instrument panel and seats.

DRIVING ASSIST

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) 212

5-2. Cruise System (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System 213
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) 214
Active Speed Limit 220

5-3. Hill Descent Control System (HDC) (If Equipped)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC) 221

5-4. Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane Assist System 222
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) 224
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) 225

5-5. Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) (If Equipped)

Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA) 226
Door Open Warning System (DOW) 227
Rear Cross Traffic Alert System (RCTA) 228
Rear Collision Warning System (RCW) 228

5-6. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) (If Equipped)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) ... 229

5-7. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) 231

5-8. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped) 233

5-9. Parking Assist System (If Equipped)

Parking View Monitor System 235
Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped) 236
Parking Radar System ... 240

5-10. Braking Force Control System

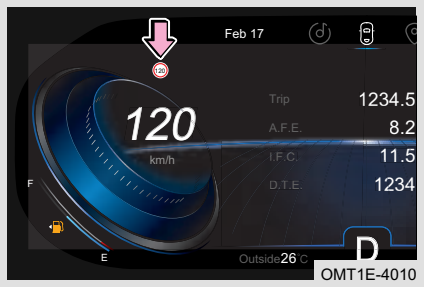
Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) .. 244
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 245
Extended Function 247

5-1. Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) (If Equipped)

Speed Limit Assist System (SLA)

Introduction

SLA is used to remind the various current road speed limit regulations, keep legal speed and observe local traffic laws.



OMT1E-4010

After speed limit sign is recognized by SLA, "120" indicator in instrument cluster comes on, if the speed exceeds current speed limit for 5 km/h, prompt sound will sound 1 time.

> **READ**
>
> SLA can be set in audio system (for details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Function limit

SLA may not be able to recognize in following situations:

1. Faded signs.
2. Signs on winding roads
3. Rotated or damaged signs.
4. High signs on highway.
5. Signs that is covered fully or partly, or that the position can not be found easily.
6. Signs covered by frost, snow, dust fully or partly.

> **WARNING**
>
> Speed limit assist function based on camera function is affected by weather and light, so the function is not appropriate for all conditions.

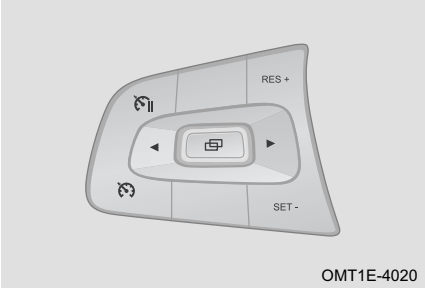
5-2. Cruise System (If Equipped)

Constant Speed Cruise System

Introduction

Constant speed cruise system can maintain the speed set by driver.

Constant speed cruise button



OMT1E-4020

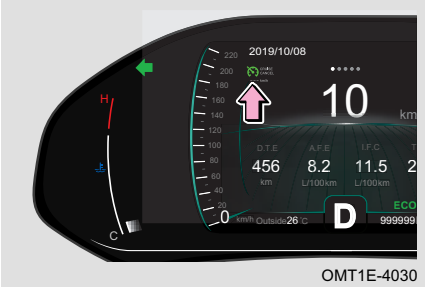
Cruise button " ": Turn on/off constant speed cruise system.

Temporarily exit cruise button " ": Temporarily exit cruise status.

RES+ button "RES+": Resume constant speed cruise system and adjust speed value.

SET- button "SET-": Enter constant speed cruise system, set active speed limit and adjust speed value.

Usage method



OMT1E-4030

■ Entering constant speed cruise system

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on;

Step 2: In cruising process, if vehicle speed is within 40 - 150 km/h, press "SET-" button again to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

■ Exiting constant speed cruise

Press " " button to exit cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

Press " " button to exit cruising state, then enter pre-cruising state, " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

In cruising process, press " " button to exit cruise function, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off; then enter pre-speed limit state and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Exit cruising state and enter pre-cruising state when brake pedal (vehicle with automatic transmission) or clutch pedal (vehicle with manual transmission) is depressed or sudden braking is applied during cruising process, "CRUISE CANCEL" indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

■ Speed setting

Press "RES +" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES +" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase continuously.

Press "SET -" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Press and hold "SET -" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease continuously.

Function limit

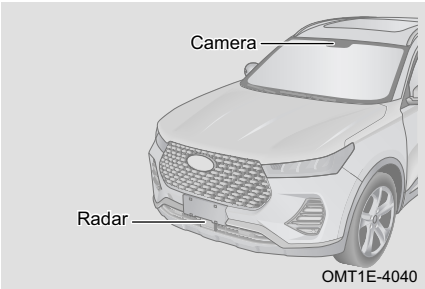
Under the following situations, do not use constant speed cruise system. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. During emergency towing.
2. In heavy traffic.
3. On winding roads.
4. On roads with sharp curves.
5. On slippery roads, such as roads covered with rain, ice or snow.
6. Vehicle speed may exceed set speed when driving up and down a steep hill.

Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC)

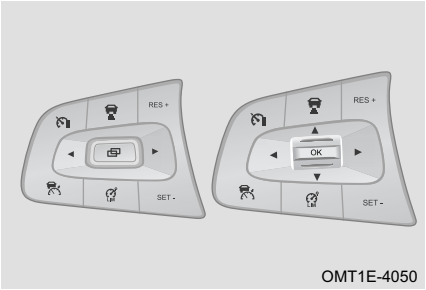
Introduction

ACC can maintain the speed set by driver and can also follow the vehicle at a set safe distance.



Adaptive cruise control system (ACC), automatic emergency braking system (AEB) and front collision warning system (FCW) share one radar and one camera sensor.

Adaptive cruise control button



OMT1E-4050

Following clearance adjusting button " ": Adjust the following clearance.

Adaptive cruise control system button " ": Turn on/off the ACC.

Temporarily exit cruise button " ": Temporarily exit cruise status.

Active speed limit LIM button " ": Turn on/off active speed limit.

RES+ button "RES +": Resume the ACC and adjust speed value.

SET- button "SET -": Enter the ACC, set active speed limit and adjust speed value.

READ
ACC and active speed limit share RES+, SET-.

Adaptive cruise control system (ACC) activation conditions

The following conditions must be met at the same time, ACC can be activated:

1. Brake pedal is not depressed (during driving).
2. Driver door is closed.
3. Driver seat belt is fastened.
4. Shift lever is in D position.
5. Parking brake is not applied.
6. HDC is not turned on.
7. ESP is turned on.
8. ESP is not activated.
9. ABS is not activated.

Usage method

OMT1E-4060

■ Entering adaptive cruise control

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on;

Step 2: In pre-cruising process, if vehicle speed is within 30 - 150 km/h, press "SET -" button again to set current speed as cruise speed and enter cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on;

Step 3: Depress brake pedal and press "SET -" button with vehicle stationary, release brake pedal within 3 seconds (depress accelerator pedal slightly if the time exceeds 3 seconds) to enter cruising state, "" indicator in instrument cluster comes on, default set vehicle speed is 30 km/h.

READ

- ACC is exited when turning on active speed limit function.
- When there is a vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, and driving speed is no higher than vehicle set speed, ACC will control the vehicle to follow vehicle ahead.
- When there is no vehicle in the front of your vehicle at the same road, or there is a vehicle and driving speed is higher than set vehicle, the vehicle drives at the set speed.
- When applying parking brake and entering pre-cruising state, press "SET -" button, instrument cluster will prompt "Please depress accelerator pedal to activate adaptive cruise control system (ACC)", driver depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC according to the prompt.

■ Exiting adaptive cruise control

When one or more of the following situations are occurred in cruising process, ACC will exit:

1. Depress brake pedal.
2. Driver door is opened.
3. Driver seat belt is not fastened.
4. Pull up electric parking button.
5. Press " " button.
6. HDC is turned on.
7. ESP operates.
8. ABS operates.
9. AEB operates.
10. ESP is not turned on.
11. Shift lever is in a position other than D.
12. Driver depress accelerator pedal for more than 15 minutes.

After the above conditions that can exit function resuming, press "RES +" button, enter cruising state and resume set state before exiting.

■ Speed setting

Press "RES +" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES +" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will increase by 10 km/h.

Press "SET -" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET -" button in cruising process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h; when speed exceeds 80 km/h, set vehicle speed will decrease by 10 km/h.

READ

- For ACC, the lowest speed setting is 30 km/h and the highest speed setting is 150 km/h.
- Speed will be lower than set speed when driving uphill, speed will be higher than set speed slightly when driving downhill.

Following clearance

Press " " button in cruising process, adjust following clearance which is divided into three levels, "Minimum Clearance", "Standard Clearance" and "Maximum Clearance".

READ

- Following clearance changes based on speed and increases with speed improving.
- In minimum clearance mode, the distance between the vehicle and vehicle ahead will quite small during following at low speed. For safety, select maximum clearance mode to follow vehicle ahead on slippery road.
- During following vehicle ahead and decreasing, ESP continuously performs brake and motor will generate operation sound when rotating, this is normal and please drive at ease.

WARNING

- Please note that any drive behavior must confirm all traffic regulations.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.

Overtaking

Depress accelerator pedal to overtake set speed in cruising process. After accelerator pedal is released, the control state will return to previous state. During overtaking, if the vehicle is too close to vehicle ahead, instrument cluster will pop up "Please take over the vehicle by driver" accompanied with urgent warning sound to remind driver to avoid.

Curve speed control

Decrease the speed when vehicle enters curve in cruising process, which help driver to drive through curve safely.

WARNING

- The driver must control vehicle, drive through curve as slowly as possible in the whole driving process.
- During entering into curve, due to limitation of detection target for radar probe, vehicle ahead on the same driving route may not be detected in time, which requires the driver to be ready to take over the control of the vehicle at any time.

Stopping and starting function

During following vehicle ahead in ACC mode, vehicle ahead decreases to stop, the vehicle also decreases to stop, after stopping:

If vehicle ahead starts within 3 seconds, the vehicle also starts automatically.

If vehicle ahead stops for more than 3 seconds and starts within 3 seconds to 10 minutes, driver need to depress accelerator pedal slightly to activate ACC.

When vehicle stops within 10 minutes, driver unfasten seat belt or open driver door, EPB is activated automatically and parking.

When vehicle stops for more than 10 minutes, the vehicle will exit ACC, and EPB will be activated automatically and parking.

WARNING

During following vehicle ahead, always pay attention to whether indicator "" is green. If it turns to gray, indicating front target has been lost in ACC mode, the vehicle will start to accelerate according to set speed.

Precautions for adaptive cruise control

Always read the following precautions when ACC is used:

1. ACC can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. If the vehicle is extremely close to vehicle on adjacent lanes, ACC may select the vehicle as following target.
3. ACC can not respond to stationary objects and vehicles, crosswise vehicles, oncoming vehicles, pedestrians, bicycles and animals.

4. When stopping vehicle briefly in ACC mode, driver must confirm that there are no obstacles or other traffic participants such as pedestrians, bicycles and animals in front of the vehicle.
5. When ACC function is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on. At this time, ACC function fails, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
6. During ACC controls vehicle, never inadvertently step on accelerator pedal, otherwise, ACC will not apply brake to vehicle, driver should always be ready to brake actively to ensure the safety of the vehicle.
7. ACC can only realize limited brake, if vehicle ahead occurs sudden brake, another driver cuts in front of the vehicle, the vehicle cuts behind a preceding vehicle, ACC may not respond or react to vehicle ahead too slow, in this case, driver should take over the vehicle control in time.
8. Driver should adjust the following clearance from vehicle ahead based on traffic flow and weather condition and is responsible for ensuring the vehicle can stop safely at any time. In inclement weather (rain, snow, fog, etc.), ACC may not recognize vehicle ahead. In this case, ACC should be turned off.
9. ACC is suitable for use on highways and roads in good condition, It is not recommend for use on urban roads, narrow roads, mountain roads, hills, tunnels, etc. If using ACC in curve, target vehicle ahead may be lost or target selection is delayed in ACC mode due to limitation of sensor detection range, in this case, ACC will control vehicle to accelerate to set speed.
10. During the process of following the vehicle ahead to stop, ACC may not be able to recognize the end of the vehicle, but the lower or upper part of vehicle (such as rear axle of truck that has higher chassis, upper part of lower flatbed trailer).In these cases, system cannot ensure a proper stopping distance or even lead to collision. Therefore, driver must keep a watch on vehicle and be ready to take over vehicle control anytime during this process.
11. Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that view of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, ACC function will be exited. Sensor performance may be reduced or function fails due to vibration or collision, in this case, please go to Chery authorized service station for recalibration.

Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always take full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

Active Speed Limit

Introduction

Driver drives vehicle at set limit speed.

Usage method

OMT1E-4070

■ Entering active speed limit

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to ON mode and press " " button to enter pre-speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on;

Step 2: With engine not started or vehicle speed ＜ 30 km/h, press "SET -" button to enter speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on, default set vehicle speed is 30 km/h;

Step 3: In speed limit process, if vehicle speed is within 30 - 200 km/h, press "SET -" button to set current speed as limit speed to enter speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

■ Exiting active speed limit

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-speed limit state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Press " " button to exit speed limit state, enter pre-cruising state, and " " indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

■ Speed setting

Press "RES +" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 1 km/h.

Long press "RES +" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will increase by 5 km/h.

Press "SET -" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 1 km/h.

Long press "SET -" button in speed limit process, set vehicle speed will decrease by 5 km/h.

Overtaking

In speed limit process, in order to overtake or in other operation condition, fully depress accelerator pedal to enter pre-speed limit state, and "" indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is more than previous set limit speed, it enters pre-speed limit state and "" indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

After overtaking, if vehicle speed is less than previous set limit speed, it enters speed limit state and "" indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

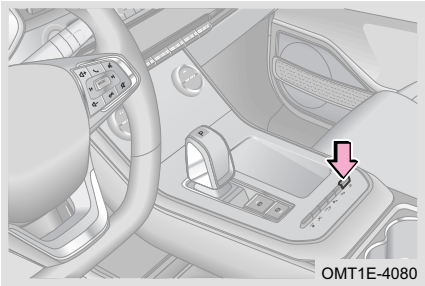
5-3. Hill Descent Control System (HDC) (If Equipped)

Hill Descent Control System (HDC)

Introduction

HDC can help vehicle pass through steep road safely under controlled conditions. After HDC is turned on, when vehicle is driving down a steep slope, for vehicle with automatic transmission, speed control range is 10 - 35 km/h, and for vehicle with manual transmission, speed control range is 14 - 35 km/h; when initial speed is lower than the minimum speed, vehicle will control at the minimum speed by default. The current control vehicle speed can be increased or decreased in a given speed range by depressing accelerator or brake pedal.

Usage method


OMT1E-4080

■ Turning on HDC

With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed ⩽ 60 km/h, press HDC switch to turn on HDC, and "" green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

■ Turning off HDC

With HDC ON and vehicle speed > 60 km/h, press HDC switch to turn off HDC, and "" green indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

With HDC ON, press HDC switch to turn off HDC, and "" green indicator in instrument cluster goes off.

CAUTION

- Before entering steep road, set HDC system so that driver can operate steering wheel without distraction.
- When HDC system is working, the ABS will start automatically if there is a tire lock.
- When HDC system is working, if any wheel loses contact with ground, the braking force will be distributed to the wheel with higher adhesion coefficient.
- HDC system is to actively apply the braking force through the ESP work. The system will have a hydraulic operation sound when working, which is a normal phenomenon. When the ESP fails, the HDC function cannot be turned on. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

WARNING

The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.

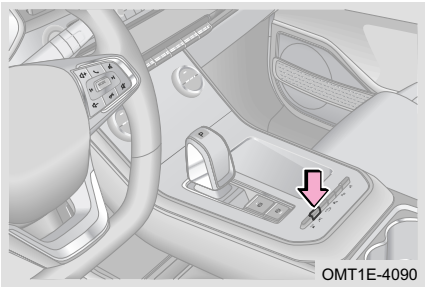
5-4. Lane Assist System (If Equipped)

Lane Assist System

Introduction

Lane assist system includes lane departure warning system (LDW) and lane keep assist system (LKA), which can assist driver to reduce traffic accident due to lane departure, improving driving safety.

Usage method


OMT1E-4090

Press lane assist system switch to switch LDW/LKA/OFF circularly.

READ

- System will memorize customer operation after operating lane assist system switch.
- Lane line captured by camera: It can detects white solid line, white dotted line, yellow solid line, yellow dotted line and double solid line lanes.
- The system may not operate in cold and bad weather conditions, rain, snow, fog or strong contrast lighting can affect the sensor.
- The system will only work normally on the roads with two clear lane lines.
- The system may not operate when driving on cement road.
- The system may not operate when driving in road construction area.
- The system may not operate when driving on flooded or muddy roads.
- The system may not work when driving on sharp turns or narrow roads.
- When only single-sided lane line is detected, the system alarm stability decreases.
- If sensor is disturbed, the system may not work.
- Sensors may misidentify temporary construction markings on the road, etc. and give false alarm by mistake.
- If your vehicle suspension kit is not approved by us, the system may not work properly.
- Keep front/left and right cameras free from obstructions, such as bird droppings, insects and ice.

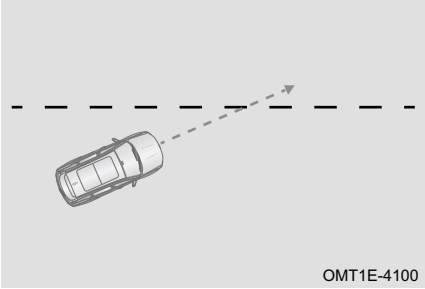
WARNING

- Lane assist system just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.

Lane Departure Warning System (LDW)

Introduction

LDW detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. The system sends an alarm and steering wheel vibrates when wheel rolls over land line and vehicle departs from its lane.



When speed increases to ⩾ 65 km/h, LDW enters activating; When speed decreases from 65 km/h to 60 km/h, LDW enters pre-activating; When speed is less than 60 km/h, LDW exits after 3 seconds.

> READ
>
> LDW sensitivity adjustment can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Lane departure warning system (LDW) indicator

When LDW enters pre-activating mode, "" gray indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When LDW enters activating mode, "" green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When LDW operates, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When LDW is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Function limit

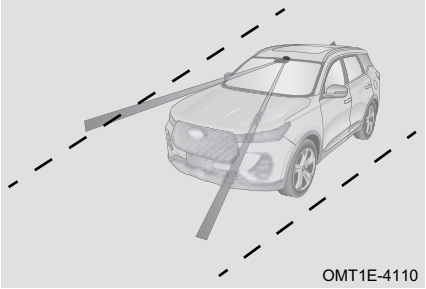
LDW may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning with high speed.
3. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
4. When depressing brake pedal with excess force.
5. When turning on hazard warning light.
6. When turning on departure side turn signal light.
7. When driving on curve with small turning radius.
8. When lane line is too thin, broken, blurred or deviates side has no lane line.

Lane Keep Assist System (LKA)

Introduction

LKA detects lane line by front view multi-function camera. When lane lines on left and right sides are detected by system, system applies corrective steering intervention to keep vehicle in the middle of lane.



When speed increases to ⩾ 60 km/h, LKA enters activating; When speed is decreases from more than 60 km/h to 55 km/h, LKA enters pre-activating.

CAUTION

- Driver performs a active control when meeting a bigger curve.
- Driver performs a active control when meeting some conditions such as lane increase, lane merger, etc.
- Driver performs a active control when meeting complex traffic environment (such as intersection, traffic jam section).

Lane keep assist system (LKA) indicator

When LKA enters pre-activating mode, "" gray indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When LKA enters activating mode or operates, "" green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When LKA is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Function limit

LKA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. When changing lanes.
2. When turning on turn signal light.
3. When braking with excess force.
4. When turning with high speed.
5. When depressing accelerator pedal with excess force.
6. When turning on hazard warning light.
7. LKA can recognize that driver does not operate steering wheel for a while.

8. Steering wheel is operated by driver when LKA applies corrective steering intervention.

Under the following situations, do not use LKA. Failure to do so may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

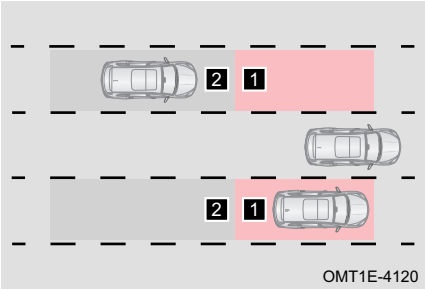
1. When driving on low-quality section.
2. When driving on road construction site.
3. When driving on roads with more curves.
4. During night and when the surrounding light is dark.
5. When driving vehicle in a sporty style.
6. In bad weathers (such as rain, snow, fog).

5-5. Blind Spot Detection System (BSD) (If Equipped)

Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA)

Introduction

BSD/LCA is used to monitor presence of moving vehicles in left and right rear areas of your vehicle and inform driver related information to remind the driver for driving safety and lane-changing safety. This system also extends some functions such as Door Open Warning System (DOW), Rear Cross Traffic Alert System (RCTA).



When speed increases to ⩾ 15 km/h, BSD enters activating; When speed is decreases from more than 15 km/h to 10 km/h, BSD enters pre-activating.

1 Detection area of BSD

2 Vehicle approaches detection area of BSD

Blind spot detection system (BSD) indicator

When BSD operates, "" green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When there is a fault in BSD, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Blind spot detection system (BSD) alarm display

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror comes on, "" green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

Level II: On base of level I, turn signal lights on the same side are triggered. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on rear mirror blinks, alarm sounds and instrument cluster ADAS displays alarm screen.

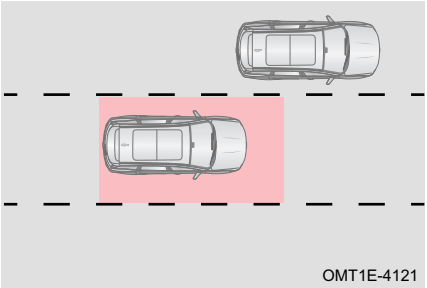
READ

- Turn vehicle power to ON mode, BSD turns on by default.
- BSD can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

CAUTION

- BSD just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, monitor management system and operate as needed in the whole driving process.
- BSD will send light alarm when it senses objects that are stationary on road or roadside (such as guardrails, tunnels, side walls, and parked vehicles).
- When towing or attaching accessories to vehicle rear (such as a bicycle carrier), turn off BSD. Otherwise, radar radio waves will be affected, causing system work abnormally.
- When lots of snow or ice accumulates on rear bumper and near radar sensor, or if drive on snowy road for a long time, BSD may not work.

Door Open Warning System (DOW)


OMT1E-4121

When vehicle power is in OFF/ACC/ON mode and the vehicle is stationary, if BSD detects approaching vehicles on left and right sides of the vehicle and any door is opened, DOW sounds an alarm to remind the driver/occupant to pay attention to following vehicle when exiting to avoid collision.

Door open warning system (DOW) alarm display

Level I: If a vehicle enters detection area and meets alarm conditions, level alarm I is triggered. "" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear view mirror comes on, indicator on door trim panel comes on.

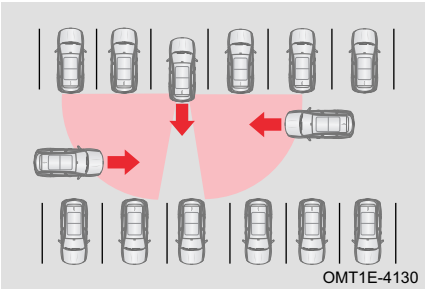
Level II: On base of level I, open the door. After level alarm II is triggered, "" yellow indicator on corresponding side rear mirror blinks, indicator on door trim panel comes on, alarm sounds.

Function limit

DOW may not work properly in the following conditions:

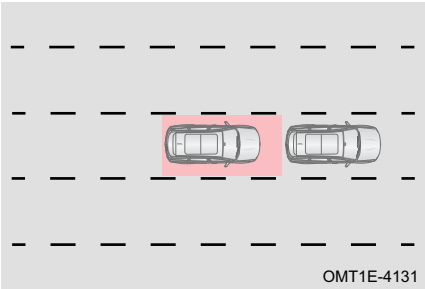
1. When the vehicle speed is higher than 0.
2. After turning vehicle power to OFF mode for 5 minutes.
3. When turning vehicle power to OFF mode and enters fortifying mode within 5 minutes.

Rear Cross Traffic Alert System (RCTA)



When vehicle power is turned to ON mode and vehicle is backed up (shift lever is shifted into R position), BSD detects that vehicles are approaching from left/right sides, "" yellow indicator on rear view mirror blinks and alarm sounds.

Rear Collision Warning System (RCW)



With vehicle power in ON mode and vehicle speed ⩾ 15 km/h, if a following vehicle quickly approaches the vehicle, hazard light flashes, alarm sounds, instrument cluster ADAS displays alarm screen.

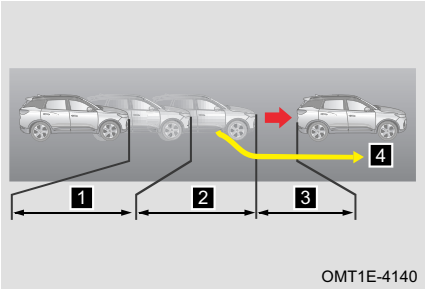
READ
RCW can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

5-6. Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) (If Equipped)

Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB)

Introduction

When vehicle is about to impact vehicle ahead or pedestrian, AEB and FCW work together, sounding an alarm to remind driver, if driver cannot respond quickly enough, vehicle will brake automatically, reducing loss from collision.



1 Start pre-warning before impacting

2 Start braking partly before impacting

3 Start emergency braking before impacting

4 If driver reacts correctly (for example, avoid a collision by steering), the following emergency braking is canceled

READ

FCW and safety distance warning can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

CAUTION

- When speed is < 30 km/h, FCW does not sound an alarm; When speed is > 85 km/h, FCW does not sound an alarm for static target ahead.
- Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 53 km/h for static vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 80 km/h for moving vehicle target; Operating speed range of AEB is 4 - 64 km/h for pedestrians and cyclists.
- Driver need to ensure that seat belts have been fastened, doors are closed. Failure to do so, AEB does not work.
- Turn on ESP, FCW, AEB, otherwise, FCW and AEB do not work.
- "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Driver need to take over vehicle because vehicle does not keep stationary state when vehicle is braked automatically to stopped.
- During AEB is activated, driver quickly rotate steering wheel or depress accelerator pedal firmly, AEB will exit.

WARNING

- The vehicle targets that can be detected by AEB include passenger vehicles, buses, trucks. For some restructured vehicles (such as cement tank trucks, special vehicles with higher or lower chassis), AEB has certain limitations in detecting.
- AEB can only play the best role when it detects some characteristics consistent with normal human walking (such as head swing, arm swing, leg swing). AEB regards pedestrians who across the vehicle's lane as target, but AEB does not regard pedestrians who walk longitudinally in the lane, walk on a curve, or is blocked by other objects.
- AEB can only play the best role when it detects body and bicycle contour information as well as normal cycling movements. AEB does not regard an oncoming cyclist as target.
- AEB is not always capable of detecting vehicles, cyclists or pedestrians, and AEB may generate unnecessary braking automatically or do not work for a variety of reasons. AEB is only a driving assist system to reduce severity of collision, it is not always possible to completely avoid collision in the speed range. Therefore, driver must control vehicle and operate as needed in the whole driving process.
- AEB just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under all driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.

Precautions for automatic emergency braking system (AEB)

For using AEB, please read the following precautions carefully:

1. AEB can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Driver controls speed and the distance from vehicle ahead according to weathers, road surface conditions, traffic conditions, etc.
3. AEB does not react to animals, crossing vehicles, incoming vehicles, bicycles and pedestrians.
4. System performance may be greatly limited for targets that cut into the lane quickly, targets that are detected after the vehicle changes lanes, and targets in curves.
5. Fasten all seat belts and secure all loads to avoid danger when AEB is triggered.
6. When AEB is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

7. When inspecting the vehicle using a drum tester, FCW and AEB should be turned off.
8. When installing non-full size spare tire, it is recommended that customer turns off FCW and AEB, and replace full-size tires of original vehicle in time.
9. In some special circumstances, AEB may perform unnecessary warning and braking, such as crossing the track of the road, entering the underground parking lot turning, etc. Some circumstances will affect and weaken sensor detection, effecting related functions of system, such as tunnel, light of incoming vehicle, reflection of slippery road.
10. Two sensors of radar and camera are installed in the front area of vehicle and behind windshield. Please note that camera of sensor should not be covered by pollutants, and front or surrounding areas should not be modified or decorated with license plate frames, etc. Especially, when sensor is completely covered by snow, system function will be exited. AEB performance may be reduced or AEB function fails due to sensor vibration or collision, in this case, please go to Chery authorized service station for recalibration for sensors.

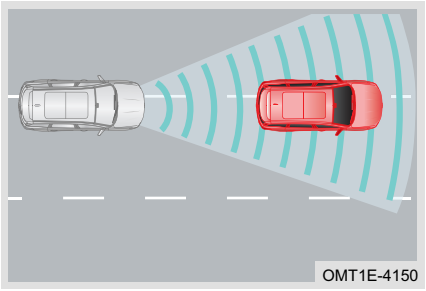
Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect AEB normal operation. AEB function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-7. Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) (If Equipped)

Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA)

Introduction

TJA/ICA detects land line through the front view camera to perform vertical and horizontal control for vehicle, providing driving assist and reducing driver's workload under monotonous driving environment or busy traffic.



TJA/ICA is turned on by audio system, ACC is turned on automatically at the same time, "" gray indicator in instrument cluster comes on. When all ACC activation conditions are met, press "SET -" button, ACC is activated firstly, meanwhile, front camera detect if there are lane lines or vehicle targets, when activation conditions are met, "" green indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

TJA is used when speed is < 60 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, the vehicle follows vehicle ahead as driving target. If neither lane line nor target vehicle is detected, TJA will be turned off.

ICA is used when speed is 60 km/h - 150 km/h: Vehicle will be kept near lane center. If no lane line is detected, ICA will be turned off regardless of whether there is a target vehicle ahead.

READ

TJA/ICA can be set in audio system (For details, refer to "3-6. Audio and Entertainment System").

Function limit

TJA/ICA may not work properly in the following conditions:

1. Any exiting condition for ACC exists.
2. Too wide or too narrow lane.
3. Too small lane curve radius.
4. Lane line is not detected.
5. Driver rotates steering wheel actively.
6. Hands off steering wheel.
7. Turn signal light is turned on.
8. Hazard warning light is turned on.
9. Vehicle speed is < 1 km/h.

WARNING

- TJA/ICA just offer assistance to you. It may not work properly under some driving conditions, weather conditions, traffic conditions or road conditions.
- The driver must control vehicle, operate as needed in the whole driving process.

Precautions for traffic jam assist system (TJA)/integrated cruise assist system (ICA)

For using TJA/ICA, please read the following precautions carefully:

1. TJA/ICA is driving assist system, which can not violate laws of physics and has certain limitations. Driver must always keep control of the vehicle and be fully responsible for the vehicle.
2. Longitudinal control of TJA/ICA is performed by ACC, lateral control of TJA/ICA is performed by LKA, all precautions for ACC and LKA are also applicable to the system.

3. TJA/ICA does not provide automatic driving function and does not allow hand off driving. Diver prepares control vehicle anytime to ensure safety under the conditions of turning, crossing, merging into one lane and vehicle ahead cutting.
4. TJA/ICA performance is affected by weather, illumination and lane line definition, with significant performance degradation or even loss of function in the case of backlight, sunset, nighttime, road surface covered by snow and ice, and unclear lane lines due to surface worn.
5. When TJA/ICA is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on, at this time, TJA/ICA function fails, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

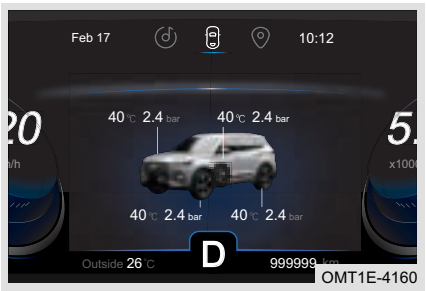
Precautions mentioned above do not cover all circumstances that may affect system normal operation. System function may fail to bring the expected effect due to other reasons. Driver must always assume full responsibility for vehicle control anytime.

5-8. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)

Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped)

Introduction

TPMS is an active safety configuration and can monitor pressure and temperature of tire in real-time and the information can be checked through information display area. When tire pressure is too low/high or temperature is too high, tire pressure monitoring system alarms.



OMT1E-4160

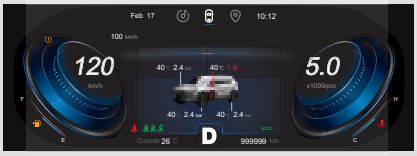
Steering wheel left combination button " ◀ "/right combination button " ▶ " can be used to switch to tire pressure display screen.

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode, tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster.

When speed is > 30 km/h for more than 45 s, tire pressure and temperature values will be displayed on instrument cluster in real-time; Vehicle power is turned from OFF position to ON position (without power-off), tire pressure and temperature values will also be displayed on instrument cluster.

When speed is > 30 km/h, if TPMS has not received radio-frequency signal from one or more sensors after 10 minutes, TPMS will send system malfunction warning. "(!)" yellow indicator on instrument cluster blinks 75 seconds and then it remains on. At this time, "Abnormal Tire Pressure, Check TPMS" is displayed and disappear 5 seconds later but can be checked on tire pressure display screen.

Low pressure warning



OMT1E-4180

When tire pressure is < 1.75 bar, and drives at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, system will warn for low pressure. During low pressure warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current pressure value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

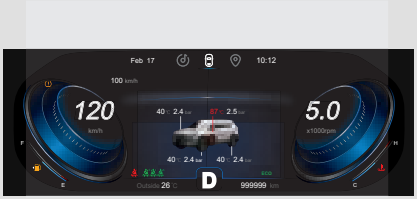
When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF, and tire pressure is < 1.75 bar, system will warn for low pressure. During low pressure warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current pressure value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When low pressure warning occurs, please inflate the tire to 2.2 bar as soon as possible. After the vehicle is driven for a period of time at a speed greater than 30 km/h, the low pressure warning will be canceled automatically.

READ

- Low tire pressure will increase fuel consumption and aggravate tire wear. Serious tire wear may cause a risk of tire blowout.
- When tire pressure is too low, inspect causes of air leakage. Please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

High temperature warning



OMT1E-4190

When tire temperature is > 85°C, and drives at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, system will warn for high temperature. During high temperature warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current temperature value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When vehicle power is turned to ON from OFF, and tire temperature is > 85°C, system will warn for high temperature. During high temperature warning, corresponding wheel icon will blink, current temperature value will be displayed and "(!)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When tire temperature is < 80°C, if driving vehicle at a speed greater than 30 km/h for period of time, high temperature warning cancels automatically.

CAUTION

- When warning for high temperature, stop driving at once to cool down tires naturally. Otherwise, accidents may be caused.
- When tire temperature is too high, it cannot be cooled by pouring cold water, which may damage the tire, causing an accident.
- When tire temperature is too high, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible as needed.

Function limit

TPMS may send system malfunction warning. in the following conditions:

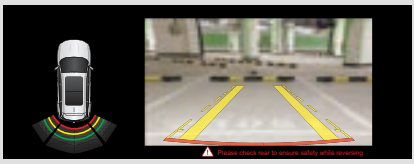
1. Configuration learning of tire pressure monitoring system is not performed after replacing wheels (spare tire included).
2. Sensor may be affected due to electromagnetic shielding caused by installing tire chains, affecting proper operation of tire pressure monitoring system.
3. Tire pressure sensor or other components has been damaged, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as needed.
4. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) may not operate due to radio interference. Tire pressure monitoring system may be interfered temporarily due to strong electromagnetic radio signals with same frequency (433 MHZ).
5. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) may not work properly due to interference of electronic equipment (over standard equipment) installed on vehicle, resulting false alarm.

5-9. Parking Assist System (If Equipped)

Parking View Monitor System

Introduction

Parking view monitor system collects the rear view image of the vehicle through rear camera and displays the rear view and land guideline to the operator by audio system display, providing safety and easy parking for driver.



OMT1E-4200

Move shift lever to R to enter parking view monitor screen, and the screen will display the parking view monitor and land guideline. Land guideline varies depending on steering wheel rotation and it is used for prejudging the reversing traveling trace.

CAUTION

- Use the distance as a reference (such as on the hill).
- Vehicle width guideline and predicting line are wider than the actual line.
- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- If tire is replaced with a different size, the displayed predicting line is different from the actual line, please use the rear view mirror or check and determine distance to other objects actually.

WARNING

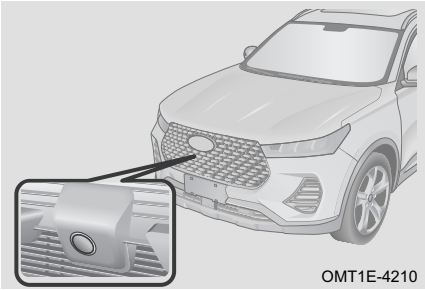
- When reversing, make sure that back door is firmly closed.
- Due to the limited monitoring range, parking view monitor system cannot view the bottom and corners of bumper.
- Because rear camera use wide-angle lens, object distance displayed on parking view monitor is different from the actual distance.
- Parking view monitor is convenient, but it is not a substitute for correct reverse operation. When reversing, be sure to look around to check if the surrounding is safe and reverse slowly.
- When washing the vehicle body with high-pressure water, do not spray water around the camera, otherwise, water will enter camera and condense on the lens, causing malfunction, fire, or electric shock.
- Never hit the lens. They are precise instrument. Failure to do so may lead to malfunction or damage, causing a fire or electric shock.
- Rear camera lens may enlarge and distort the view, so image on display is different from real object or it cannot reflect the real object accurately, and there is also blind spot and a little delay.
- When reversing, always pay extra attention to surrounding children, small animals and objects, because they cannot always be detected by camera.
- Never distract your attention from surrounding traffic due to images on display.

Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped)

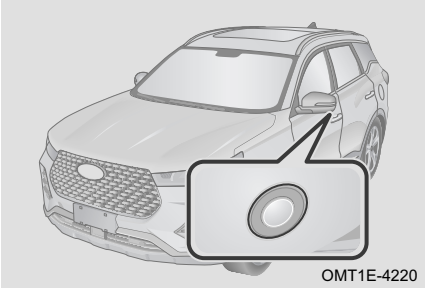
Introduction

Panoramic view monitor system collects the surrounding view image of the vehicle through four cameras and displays the surrounding view and land guideline to the operator by audio system display, providing safety and easy parking for driver.

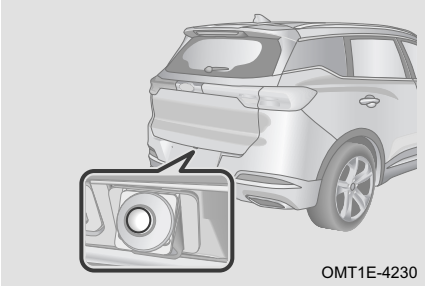
Camera layout



Installation position of front camera: Located at intake grille of front bumper.

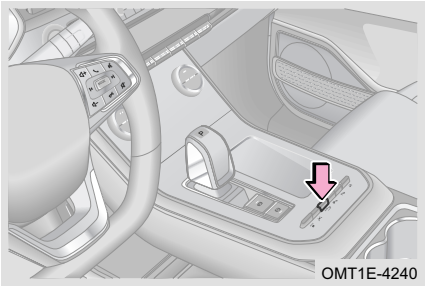


Installation position of left/right cameras: Located at the bottom of left/right outside rear view mirrors.



Installation position of rear camera: Located at center part above rear license plate.

Usage method



■ Entering panoramic view monitor

When vehicle power is turned to ON mode and speed is < 15 km/h (D position): If parking radar obstacle distance signal is received, it enters panoramic view monitor system (if it is equipped with auto parking assist system (APA)).

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and speed is < 20 km/h: Move shift lever to R to enter panoramic view monitor system.

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and speed is < 20 km/h: Press panoramic view monitor switch to enter panoramic view monitor system.

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and speed is < 20 km/h: It enters panoramic view monitor when turning with large angle (it is necessary to activate panoramic view monitor when turning in panoramic view monitor setting).

Turn vehicle power to ON mode, and speed is < 20 km/h: It enters panoramic view monitor when turning on left/right turn signal lights (it is necessary to activate panoramic view monitor when operating turn signal lights in panoramic view monitor setting).

■ Exiting panoramic view monitor

When speed is > 30 km/h, it exits the panoramic view monitor system.

After turning vehicle power to OFF mode, it exits the panoramic view monitor system.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by receiving parking radar obstacle distance signal, move shift lever to N/P position or there is no obstacle distance information, after delaying 15 seconds it exits the panoramic view monitor system (if equipped).

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by R position, move shift lever out from R position to exit the panoramic view monitor system after delaying 15 seconds.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by panoramic view monitor switch, click the switch again to exit the panoramic view monitor system.

When panoramic view monitor system is entered by left/right signal lights, turn off left/right signal lights to exit the panoramic view monitor system.

⚠ CAUTION
The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

Switching view

OMT1E-4250

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch back button to exit panoramic view monitor setting.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch 2D/3D button to switch 2D/3D angle.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch front/rear wide angle button to switch front/rear wide angle.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch "■" button to switch to corresponding view.

Enter panoramic view monitor, touch shortcut button on the right of panoramic view monitor to enter panoramic view monitor setting.

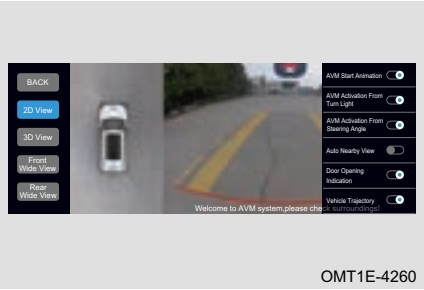
READ

The panoramic view monitor system is very helpful for parking and safety driving. It is recommended that you should be familiar with this function in an open and convenient area.

CAUTION

- Do not scratch the lens when cleaning dirt or snow on the camera surface.
- Before using panoramic view monitor system, make sure to extend outside rear view mirrors and close the back door firmly.
- The object distance seen from the panoramic view monitor system is different from the actual distance.
- The camera is installed on the front grille, outside rear view mirror and above the rear license plate. Do not place anything on the camera.
- The panoramic view monitor system has been calibrated professionally before leaving the factory. Any removal/installation and changes on camera installation position and angle without permission may affect the function and effect of panoramic view monitor system.
- The panoramic view monitor system provides driving assistance convenience, but the object in the image does not reflect the actual size and obstacle distance. Comparing with the actual image, the image has a little delay and blind spot. Therefore, the panoramic view function is not a substitute for driver's operation and judgment. Driver should pay attention to the surroundings and drive safely during turning on/off and using the function.

System setting



OMT1E-4260

[Panoramic view starting screen] Click to start starting screen: When driver enters the panoramic view monitor system for the first time by panoramic view monitor button, panoramic view starting screen will be displayed.

[Auto zoomin view] Click to turn on auto zoomin view: Enter zoomin view automatically based on obstacle distance.

[Door open view] Click to turn on door open view: Open front left/front right door to enter front left/front right door open view.

[Lane guideline display] Click to turn on lane guideline display: Move shift lever to R to enter panoramic view monitor, load static/dynamic lane guideline and wheel track line.

[License plate number display] Click to turn on license plate number display.

[Parking radar display] Click to turn on parking radar display.

[Restore default setting] Click to restore default settings.

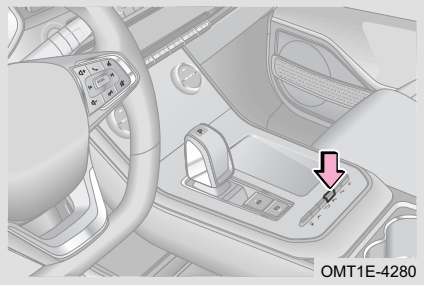
Parking Radar System

Introduction

Parking radar system is a radar detection device, adopts radar sensors (3 sensors or 12 sensors) to detect if there are obstacles from front/rear of vehicle and distance from obstacles. The driver is prompted by the audio head unit display, sound alarm, etc., so as to assist the driver to park safely and easily.

When radar sensor is malfunctioning, parking radar system will sound 2 seconds when it is turned on (for with 12 sensors model: when applying parking brake or move shift lever to P position, radar sensor malfunction warning will be shielded).

Usage method


OMT1E-4280

Low-configuration model (3 sensors): Turn vehicle power to ON mode, shift lever is moved to R position, parking radar system is activated; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio head unit displays corresponding distance information accompanied by alarm sound.

High-configuration model (12 sensors): Turn vehicle power to ON mode or shift lever is shifted to R position, parking radar system is activated; When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio head unit displays corresponding distance information accompanied by alarm sound from audio head unit.

The parking radar system will be turned on by default when the high configuration vehicle is first powered on, parking radar switch indicator comes on; Press parking radar switch, parking radar switch indicator goes off and exits parking radar system; When speed is > 15 km/h, parking radar system is exited. When speed is < 15 km/h, parking radar system will be reactivated by pressing parking radar switch.

READ

- Under activating state of front radar, when applying parking brake or shift lever is in P position, audio head unit will only display arc information, and audio head unit prompt does not sound.
- For model with high-configuration, move shift lever to R position to activate parking radar system (whether or not parking radar system is turned on before moving shift lever to R position), parking radar system still operates when shifting to other positions

3 sensors display

When a radar sensor detects an obstacle, audio head unit displays corresponding distance information accompanied by alarm sound:

Distance/cm	Display Method			Note
	Rear left	Rear center	Rear right	
⩽ 35				Sound continuously
40 ⩽ L ⩽ 60				4 Hz sound
65 ⩽ L ⩽ 90				2 Hz sound
95 ⩽ L ⩽ 150				1 Hz sound

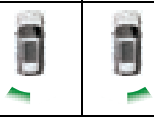
12 sensors display

When front/rear radar sensors detect obstacles, audio head unit will display corresponding distance information and sound prompt sound; When side radar sensors detect obstacles, audio head unit will display corresponding distance information and does not sound prompt sound:

■ System display (front 6 - sensor)

Distance/cm	Display Method						Note
	Front left side	Front left	Front left center	Front right center	Front right	Front right side	
⩽ 35							Sound continuously
40 ⩽ L ⩽ 60							4 Hz Sound
65 ⩽ L ⩽ 90							2 Hz Sound

■ System display (rear 6 - sensor)

Distance/cm	Display Method						Note
	Rear left side	Rear left	Rear left center	Rear right center	Rear right	Rear right side	
⩽ 35							Sound continuously
40 ⩽ L ⩽ 60							4 Hz Sound
65 ⩽ L ⩽ 90							2 Hz Sound
95 ⩽ L ⩽ 150							1Hz Sound

READ

Monitoring distance is the shortest vertical distance between obstacle and radar sensor.

Function limit

Parking radar system may not work normally in the following conditions:

1. When vehicle is on a steep slope.
2. When driving in jelly-like snow or in rain.
3. Low objects such as rocks, etc. cannot be detected.
4. Objects that are higher than bumper cannot be detected.
5. Thin objects such as wires, fences and ropes, etc. cannot be detected.
6. When vehicle is equipped with a high frequency radio or antenna is in use.
7. When radar sensor surfaces are frozen, they will not detect any obstacle.
8. When radar sensors are covered by dirt, snow or mud, they may not detect obstacles.
9. Objects that easily absorb ultrasonic waves such as soft snow, cotton, sponge, etc. cannot be detected.
10. When there is noisy near the vehicle, such as vehicle horns, motorcycle engines, air brakes of large vehicles, or other loud noises producing ultrasonic waves.
11. If obstacles are detected by multiple radar sensors, the distances between each radar sensors and obstacles are displayed on audio head unit simultaneously, and system sounds according to nearest obstacle.

CAUTION

- For obstacles out of the detection range, radar sensors do not give a warning.
- When moving, be aware the reverse radar sensors on the other side may get close to other obstacles.

Cleaning radar sensor

When washing vehicle, use a soft cloth or water (low water pressure) to wash off foreign matter such as snow, mud, and dust on the surface of the radar sensor.

High pressure water flow such as water guns or large external forces may cause damage to the radar sensors. Do not pinch or impact the radar sensors, or it may be resulting in abnormal operation.

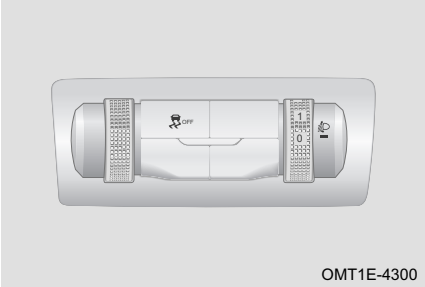
5-10.Braking Force Control System

Electronic Stability Program System (ESP)

Introduction

ESP keep vehicle stability when oversteering or understeering. When oversteering or understeering is detected, system applies brake to one or more wheels to enhance control of vheicle stability. ESP also extends some functions (such as ABS and EBD,etc.) to ensure the lateral stability when vehicle driving.

Usage method



Press ESP OFF switch (if equipped) to turn off ESP; Press the switch again to turn on ESP.

Starting method of ESP various depending on vehicle configuration. For details, refer to "2-2. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Color)" "2-3. Instrument Cluster (7-inch Composite)" "2-4. Instrument Cluster (12.3-inch)".

READ

- When driving vehicle for the first time, ESP is on by default.
- ESP cannot be turned off during operation.

Electronic stability program system (ESP) indicator

When ESP is turned off, "OFF" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

When ESP operates, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster blinks.

When ESP is malfunctioning, "" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

WARNING

- When ESP is malfunctioning, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Even when ESP is working, high speed driving, sharp turns or poor road conditions can cause an accidents.
- ESP function does not completely ensure that you can take over vehicle if it is lost control under various extreme situations. Even with ESP, always follow laws and regulations to avoid accidents.

Function limit

Under the following conditions, electronic stability program system (ESP) needs to be turned off:

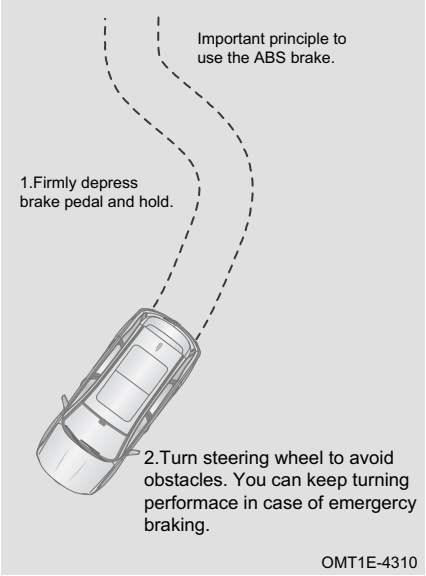
1. When driving with tire chains.
2. When starting vehicle on power tester.
3. When driving on roads with deep snow or loose roads.

READ
To improve vehicle traction when driving on sand or gravel, it is recommended to turn ESP off.

Anti-lock Brake System (ABS)

Introduction

ABS can prevent wheel from being locked in excessive braking or braking on the slippery road, avoiding vehicle sideways slippage and keeping vehicle stability.



ABS does not function during normal braking and operates only (brake pedal pulsates with noise, ensuring brake performance and steering performance, if the space is enough, the vehicle can also avoid obstacles) during emergency braking. Never release brake pedal in this case.

WARNING

- Always drive carefully and make sure to decelerate during turning.
- When ABS is malfunctioning, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Although ABS can ensure the best braking effect, braking distance will vary largely due to road conditions.
- Also, ABS cannot eliminate risks arising from close-following driving, wading, turning quickly or driving on poor road surfaces and cannot avoid accidents caused by inattentive or inappropriate driving.
- ABS cannot ensure that brake distance can be shorted in any situations, vehicle equipped with tire chains, on sand or snow covered roads, may require a longer braking distance compared to vehicles without ABS.

Anti-lock brake system (ABS) indicator

When there is a fault in ABS, "(ABS)" yellow indicator in instrument cluster comes on.

WARNING

When ABS indicator and brake system indicator continuously come on at the same time, park your vehicle on a safety place far away traffic main artery and go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

Function limit

■ ABS will make operation sound in following conditions:

1. Rebounding sound of brake pedal.
2. Impacting sound between suspension and vehicle body due to emergency braking.
3. Operation sound of motor, solenoid valve and return pump in hydraulic unit.
4. Operation sound of solenoid valve when EBD is intervened in braking.
5. It will drone for a short time after turning engine start stop switch to ON or starting engine, indicating system self-test is performed.

■ Always maintain a safe distance from vehicle ahead in the following situations:

1. When driving on rough roads.
2. When driving on roads with potholes or uneven surfaces.
3. When driving with tire chains.
4. When driving on dirt, gravel or snow-covered roads.

CAUTION

Tire size, specification and tread pattern wear will seriously affect ABS performance. Tire used to replace should have same size, load capacity and structure as original one. When tire is abnormal, it is recommended to replace with a original one at Chery authorized service station.

WARNING

- When driving in rainy day, properly control the vehicle speed, if wheel spins or slips, ABS will cannot control the vehicle.
- Although ABS can help to control vehicle, make sure to drive carefully, maintain a moderate speed and keep safe distance from preceding vehicles. There are certain limitations in vehicle stability and steering wheel operation effect even ABS operates.

Extended Function

Electric brake force distribution system (EBD)

EBD automatically adjusts braking force distribution ratio of front and rear axles according to axial load transfer difference caused by braking to improve braking efficiency. In addition, EBD works together with ABS to improve braking stability. Also, when braking in corner, brake force of inside and outside wheel can be adjusted to improve braking stability.

Traction control system (TCS)

TCS is a extended function of ESP. During starting off or rapidly acceleration, drive wheels may slip. In case of on a slippery road such as snowy or icy road, direction could get out of control and cause dangerous. When TCS detects that driven wheel speed is lower than drive wheel speed (a kind of wheel slip symptom) using sensor, it sends a signal to adjust ignition timing, reduce throttle opening, downshift or brake wheels so that wheel no longer slips.

Hill hold control system (HHC)

HHC can prevent vehicle from moving backward when starting off on uphill. After vehicle is stationary, HHC adopts longitudinal acceleration sensor to determine if the vehicle is on a slope. When vehicle starts from stationary state on a slope to drive or reverse upwards, HHC automatically operates. When starting off, after driver releases brake pedal, system maintains previous braking pressure for 1 to 2 seconds to hold the vehicle. As increasing of drive torque, brake pressure reduces gradually, avoiding accidents caused by moving backward when starting off on a slope.

Hydraulic brake assist (HBA)

HBA is a extended function of ESP to shorten the braking distance in emergency braking. In an emergency, driver usually brakes in time, but generally does not apply the maximum braking force, thus lengthening braking distance. In this case, HBA will operate: When driver depresses brake pedal rapidly in an emergency with insufficient force, HBA quickly increases brake pressure to maximum level, making anti-lock braking system shorten braking distance more quickly and effectively.

Drag torque control (DTC)

In normal driving, if release accelerator pedal quickly or shift the shift lever to lower gear by mistake, vehicle will produce a similar braking effect, especially on slippery road, the wheel will lock up. At this time, ESP will request engine to increase torque output, resume rotation of drive wheels, improving steering stability.

Roll movement intervention system (RMI)

RMI is used to prevent vehicle from rolling over on road when operate vehicle in dynamic (such as lane change) and static (such as loop driving) status.

Start assist function (if equipped)

Torque output when vehicle starts off is increased to easily start off.

IN CASE OF AN EMERGENCY

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Vehicle Emergency Rescue 250
Hazard Light 250
Reflective Vest 251
Warning Triangle 251
Spare Tools 252

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving 252
If Engine Coolant Temperature is High 256
If Battery is Depleted 257
If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally 259

6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle 260
Installing Towing Eyelet 261
Emergency Towing 262

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box 263
Checking Fuse 264
Replacing Fuse 264

6-5. ERA-GLONASS (If Equipped)

ERA-GLONASS 265

6-1. Basic Knowledge of Vehicle Emergency

Vehicle Emergency Rescue

OMT1E-5010

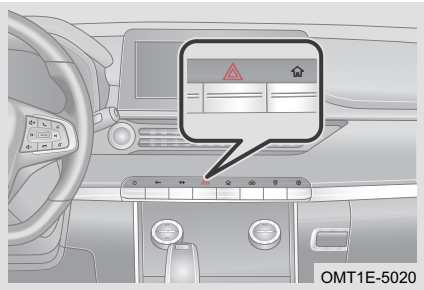
Manual vehicle emergency rescue: When an accident occurs, press soft button on the audio head unit, vehicle manually calls Chery customer service to ask for rescue, making travel more assured.

Automatic vehicle emergency rescue: When an accident occurs, vehicle will automatically calls Chery customer service to ask for rescue, making travel more assured.

READ

- To use vehicle emergency rescue function properly, focus on and pay in time.
- When vehicle enters underground garage or travels on roads under intense electromagnetic interference (no 2G signal), the function may not operate properly.

Hazard Light


OMT1E-5020

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., please turn on the hazard lights to warn other vehicles to avoid the secondary accident.

Press hazard light switch, turn lights flash and the turn light indicator on instrument cluster flashes at the same time; Press the switch again, turn lights and indicator will turn off.

READ

- The hazard light can still work when the vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.
- The hazard light is automatically activated when the airbag is operating.

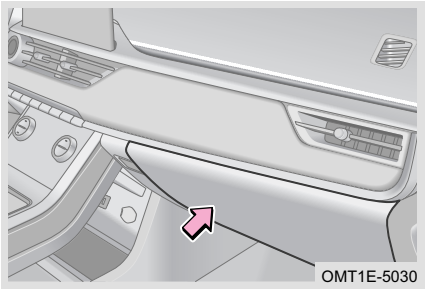
CAUTION

To prevent battery from being discharged, do not turn on the hazard lights more than necessary when the engine is not started.

Emergency braking alarm function

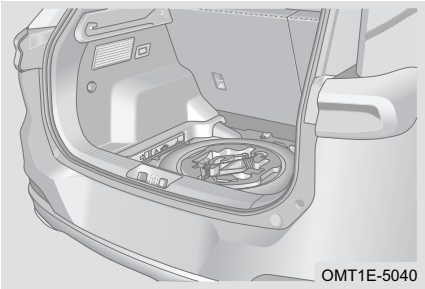
When brake pedal is depressed in emergency and the deceleration is high at higher speed, the turn lights and turn light indicator on instrument cluster flash quickly; Release the brake pedal, press the hazard light switch or turn the vehicle power to OFF mode, the turn lights and turn light indicator on instrument cluster will stop flashing.

Reflective Vest


OMT1E-5030

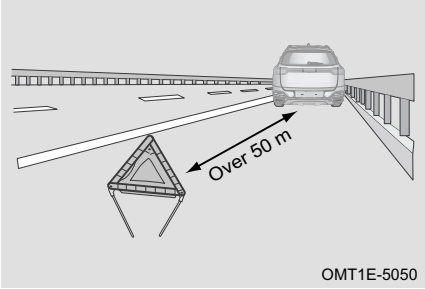
In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., wear the reflective vest with reflective strip facing outwards. Its reflective performance can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.

Warning Triangle


OMT1E-5040

Warning triangle is located under the luggage carpet.

In case of vehicle failure or traffic accident etc., the reflective performance of warning triangle can warn other vehicles to avoid secondary accidents.



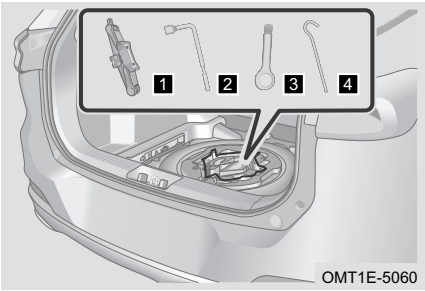
OMT1E-5050

Place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 50 m behind the vehicle on a normal road.

Place the warning triangle at a distance of more than 150 m behind the vehicle on the highway.

In rain or on a corner, it should be placed over 150 m away to allow vehicles behind notice the triangle as early as possible.

Spare Tools



1 Jack
2 Wheel bolt wrench
3 Towing eyelet
4 Jack rocker

6-2. Vehicle Emergency Handling

If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving

If a tire goes flat during driving, slow down gradually, grip the steering wheel with two hands and keep driving straightly. Stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

1. Preparations before replacing flat tire;
Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (for A/T models) or N (for M/T models);

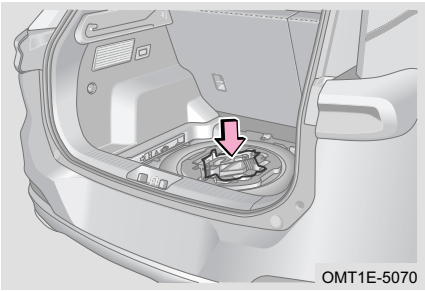
Step 3: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and turn on hazard lights;

Step 4: Have everyone get out of vehicle and stay away from traffic;

Step 5: Wear reflective vest, and place the warning triangle at a distance of 50 m - 150 m behind the vehicle (depending on actual condition).

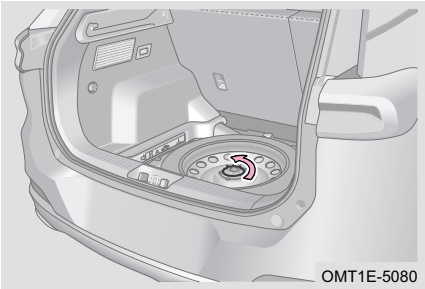
> ⚠ CAUTION
> Do not continue driving with a flat tire. Driving even a short distance with a flat tire can damage the tire beyond repair.

2. Take out spare tire.



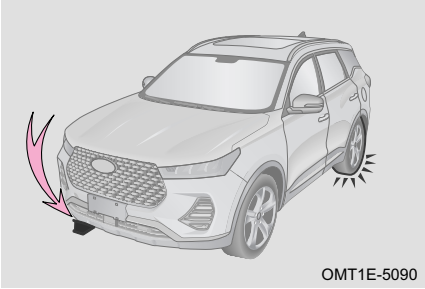
Step 1: Open back door, lift the luggage compartment carpet and take out spare tools;

> READ
> Some models are equipped with full-size spare tires.



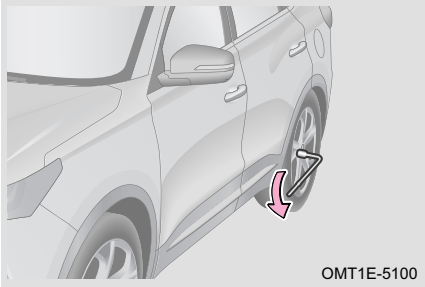
Step 2: Rotate fixing device of spare tire counterclockwise to remove it, and then take out spare tire.

3. Remove flat tire.



Step 1: Put a block under the tire diagonally opposite to the flat tire to prevent vehicle from rolling;

Flat Tire	Wheel Block Position
Front left wheel	Behind rear right wheel
Front right wheel	Behind rear left wheel
Rear left wheel	In front of front right wheel
Rear right wheel	In front of front left wheel



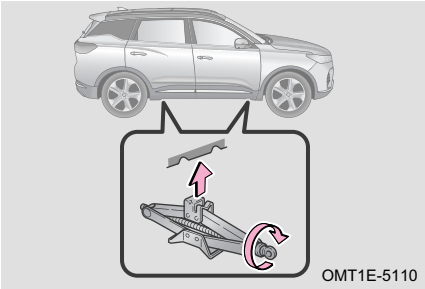
Step 2: Fit wheel bolt wrench to the wheel bolt of flat tire, set the handle on left side, hold the end of wrench handle and push it downward, loosen each bolt of flat tire about one-half turn;

⚠ CAUTION

When removing wheel bolts by wheel bolt wrench, avoid wheel bolt wrench dropping off from bolt abnormally as much as possible, otherwise, wheel bolts will be damaged easily.

WARNING

Do not remove the bolts completely. Or, wheel may drop off because of the vehicle pressure, causing personal injury.


OMT1E-5110

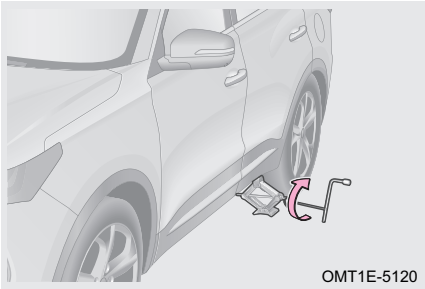
Step 3: Position jack on firm and level ground, turn jack handle clockwise by hand, making the notch of jack contacts with the correct jacking-up point;

READ

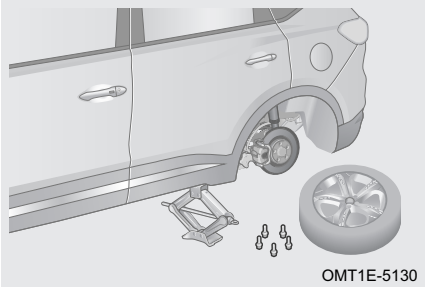
- Jack rated load: 1,200 kg.
- Jack the vehicle to a proper height at which tire can be replaced just.

WARNING

Never put any part of body under the vehicle when vehicle is jacked up to avoid personal injury.


OMT1E-5120

Step 4: When the notch of jack contacts correct jacking-up point, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn the wheel bolt wrench clockwise to jack up the vehicle;

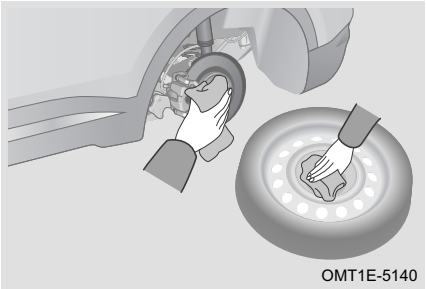

OMT1E-5130

Step 5: Remove the wheel bolts of flat tire counterclockwise with the wheel bolt wrench, and remove the flat tire.

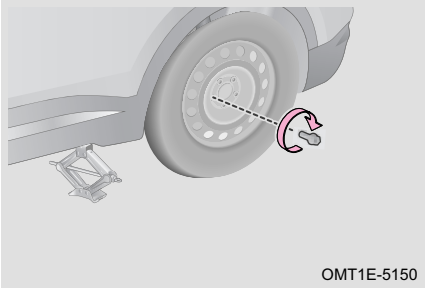
CAUTION

Place the flat tire on ground with rim facing upward, avoid scratching the rim surface.

4. Install spare tire.

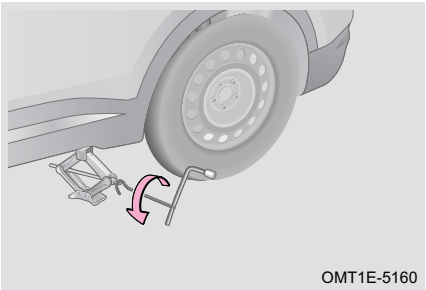

OMT1E-5140

Step 1: Remove any attachments from mounting surface. Make sure wheel hub well contacts with wheel surface, and install spare tire;

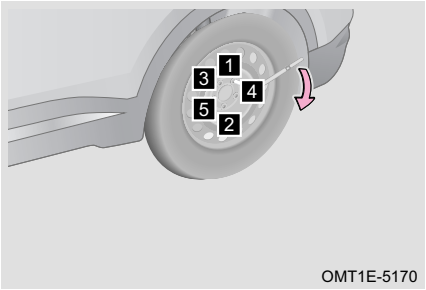

OMT1E-5150

Step 2: When installing wheel bolts, screw in all wheel bolts clockwise by hand. Then straighten the spare tire, and pretighten all wheel bolts with wheel bolt wrench;

⚠ CAUTION
Do not apply oil or grease on wheel bolts.


OMT1E-5160

Step 3: Make sure all persons around the vehicle stay in the safe area, fit jack rocker into jack, and wheel bolt wrench into jack rocker, and turn wheel bolt wrench counterclockwise to lower the vehicle;



OMT1E-5170

Step 4: Using wheel bolt wrench, tighten bolts in sequence shown in illustration. Repeat the process 2 to 3 times to ensure that wheel bolts are tightened in place;

Step 5: Stow the flat tire and place jack, warning triangle and spare tools in original place;

Step 6: If the pressure of spare tire is insufficient, drive vehicle slowly to the nearest Chery authorized service station to inflate tire to correct pressure.

WARNING

- Driving at specified speed of 80 km/h or less with a non-full-size spare tire.
- Non-full size spare tires cannot be used for a long time. Tighten wheel bolts to 130 ± 10 N·m after replacing the non-full size spare wheel. Drive slowly to the nearest Chery authorized service station (recommended distance ⩽ 80 km) to replace standard tire. Otherwise, the wheel may fall off due to loosen bolts.

If Engine Coolant Temperature is High

If the engine coolant temperature is high during driving, and engine coolant temperature gauge approaching H area or red indicator " " on instrument cluster comes on, please stop vehicle to a safe place away from the traffic road.

Step 1: Stop vehicles on solid, level ground;

Step 2: Apply parking brake and shift the shift lever to P (for A/T models) or N (for M/T models);

Step 3: Turn off A/C system, water dripping from air conditioning after use is normal;

Step 4: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode after idling for several minutes, and turn on hazard lights;

Step 5: Before opening the hood, check whether there is steam or coolant overflow or leakage. Only open hood when there is no steam or coolant overflow or leakage, otherwise you may cause burns;

Step 6: Check the coolant level, if it is normal, it may be caused by the failure of radiator fan. Please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately;

Step 7: Check the coolant level, if it is low, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

READ

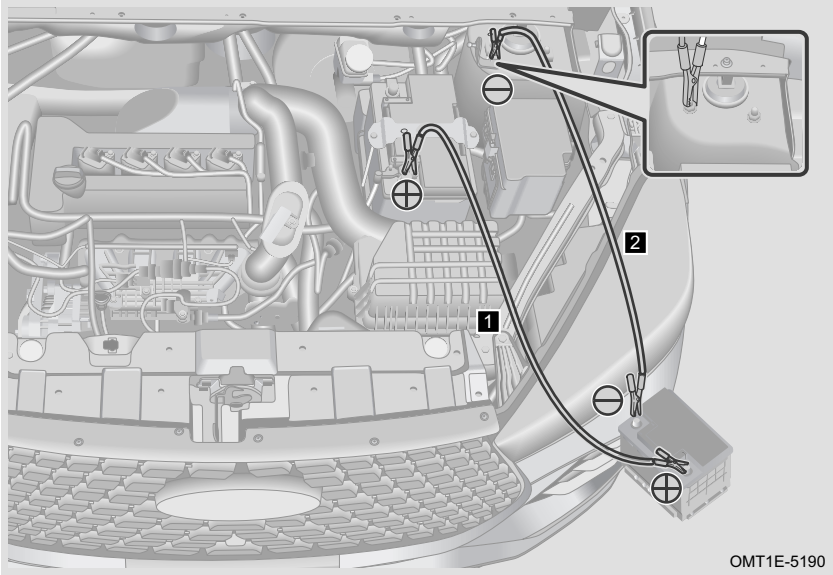
If the coolant level is low, water can be used temporarily, please go to Chery authorized service station to replace coolant as soon as possible.

CAUTION

If the engine overheats frequently, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

If Battery is Depleted

Jump-starting



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, and connect jumper cables;

1 Connect one end of positive cable to positive terminal (+) of battery of discharged vehicle, and the other end to the positive terminal (+) of battery of rescue vehicle.

2 Connect one end of negative cable to negative terminal (-) of battery of the rescue vehicle, and the other end to the unpainted metal part of discharged vehicle.

Step 2: Start the engine of rescue vehicle, slightly increase engine speed and maintain for approximately 5 minutes to temporarily charge the battery of discharged vehicle;

Step 3: If the vehicle is still unable to start, check whether the jumper cable is connected normally, and then charge the battery;

Step 4: Once the engine is started, disconnect jumper cables in the reverse order of connection (negative cable first and then the positive cable).

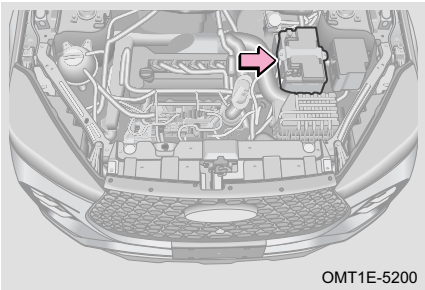
CAUTION

- Do not jump start unless you are sure that the battery voltage for jumper starting is 12 to 13 V.
- If the battery is lack of power frequently, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- The negative terminal of battery on rescue vehicle should not be directly connected to negative terminal of battery on discharged vehicle.
- When connecting and removing jumper cables, ensure that they do not become entangled in fan, belt, etc.
- Ensure that the jumper cables are properly connected and keep a certain distance between terminals, to prevent the jumper cables from touching each other or touch other metal parts of the vehicle.
- Before turning off vehicle power or locking the vehicle, make sure that the electrical appliances of vehicle are turned off, to prevent the vehicle from being unable to start normally due to battery power loss.

WARNING

- The specified jumper cables should be used.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- If you are unsure about how to follow the procedure, Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.

Replacing battery


OMT1E-5200

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Open the hood;

Step 3: Remove the negative (-) battery terminal cable;

Step 4: Remove the positive (+) battery terminal cable;

Step 5: Remove the battery holder and the battery;

Step 6: Install a new battery that has the same specification as the used one;

Step 7: Install the new battery properly in the reverse order of removing.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Battery contain acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Please deal with it according to the local regulations and provisions regarding environmental protection.

CAUTION

While removing battery, be careful to avoid the metal tool contacting both battery terminals or touching the positive (+) battery terminal and body at the same time.

WARNING

- Do not leave battery within the reach of children.
- Do not smoke, use matches, cigarette lighters or allow open flame near the battery.
- Always wear gloves and safety glasses during operation, as battery contain acid which is poisonous and corrosive. Do not lean the battery.
- If acid spills on your skin or clothes, the liquid must be neutralized with alkaline water (such as: soap) immediately, and then wash it with clean water. Get emergency medical attention immediately, if necessary.

If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally

If your vehicle cannot start normally, first make sure you have followed the correct starting procedures and check if fuel is sufficient.

■ Starter speed is too low, but vehicle cannot start normally

Step 1: Check if battery terminals are tight and clean;

Step 2: Turn on headlights. If the light is dim, it indicates that the battery is discharged. Please try jump starting;

Step 3: Try to start engine again, if it still cannot start normally, the starting system may be malfunctioning. Please contact Chery authorized service stationfor inspection and repair immediately.

■ Starter speed is normal, but vehicle cannot start normally

Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF or ACC mode, try to start the engine again;

Step 2: If the engine still cannot be started normally, it may cause fuel to overflow due to repeat starting. Turn vehicle power to OFF mode, try to start engine again after a few minutes;

Step 3: Try to start engine again, if it still cannot start normally, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- To avoid damage to the starter, starting operation should not exceed 15 seconds each time.
- If vehicle becomes difficult to start or stalls frequently, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.

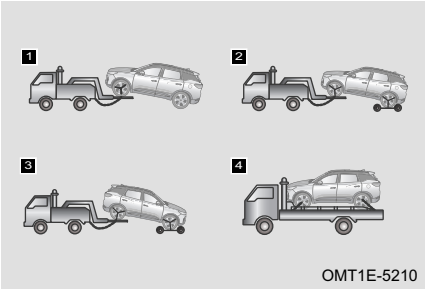
6-3. Towing

Towing Vehicle

Towing must comply with state/provincial and local laws about towing.

Before towing the vehicle, release parking brake (for emergency releasing electric parking, refer to 4-5. Brake System), and shift the shift lever to N.

Correct towing methods



OMT1E-5210

1 Towing with a wheel lift-type truck from front, and secure the vehicle firmly (for front-wheel drive vehicles)

2 When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from front, use a towing dolly under the rear wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly (for front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles)

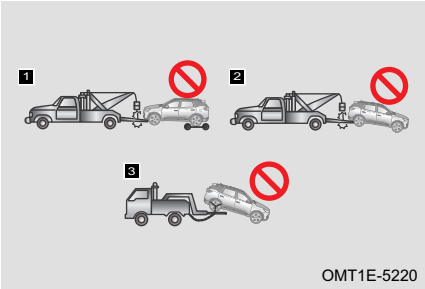
3 When towing with a wheel lift-type truck from behind, use a towing dolly under the front wheels, and secure the vehicle firmly (for front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles)

4 When towing with a flatbed truck, secure the vehicle firmly (for front-wheel drive, rear-wheel drive and 4WD vehicles)

CAUTION

- It is recommended to use flatbed truck for 4WD vehicles.
- Use a flatbed truck if the vehicle's wheels or axle are damaged.
- Ensure that there is a proper clearance between the wheels not lifted and ground. Otherwise, the bumper and underbody of the towed vehicle will be damaged during towing.

Wrong towing methods



OMT1E-5220

1 Towing with sling-type truck sling from front of the vehicle

2 Towing with sling-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground

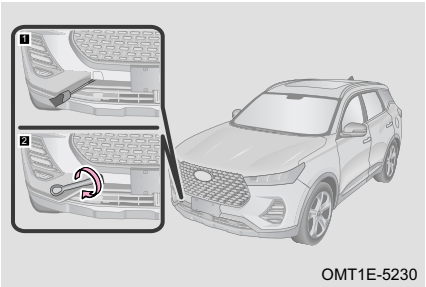
3 Towing with wheel lift-type truck sling from rear of the vehicle whilst front wheels are on the ground

CAUTION

Do not tow with a sling-type truck to prevent body damage.

Installing Towing Eyelet

Front towing eyelet

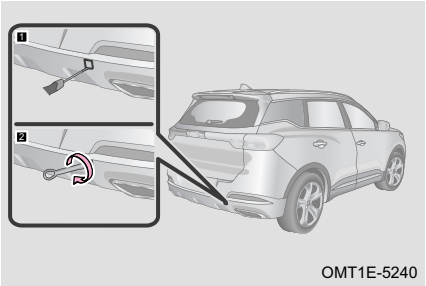


OMT1E-5230

Step 1: Use a screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the front towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

Rear towing eyelet



OMT1E-5240

Step 1: Use a screwdriver with its tip taped to remove the rear towing eyelet hole cover;

Step 2: Install towing eyelet into eyelet hole in a clockwise direction. Then tighten it firmly with wheel bolt wrench.

CAUTION

- Only use specified towing eyelet. Otherwise, vehicle may be damaged.
- Towing rope or towing bar can only be installed while towing eyelet installed in place.
- Drive the vehicle slowly and smoothly when towing. Impact due to excessive tension may damage the vehicle.

WARNING

Make sure that towing eyelet is installed securely. Otherwise, the towing eyelet may come loose when towing, which may cause an accident, resulting in death or serious injury.

Emergency Towing

If flatbed truck is not available during towing, your vehicle may be temporarily towed using a towing hook. This should only be attempted on hard surfaced road for short distances at low speed.

When using towing hook, driver must be in towed vehicle to operate steering wheel and brake pedal, and vehicle's wheels, drive train, axle, steering system and braking system must be in good condition.

Before emergency towing, release parking brake (for emergency releasing electric parking, refer to 4-5. Brake System), shift the shift lever to N, and turn vehicle power to ACC or ON mode.

CAUTION

- Do not perform emergency towing for long periods of time.
- Secure a towing cable, chain or lever to the vehicle towing eyelet.
- Never tow a vehicle heavier than this vehicle, otherwise the vehicle may be damaged.
- Both drivers must be familiar with the towing process, otherwise they cannot carry out towing work.
- Tow vehicle as straightly ahead as possible, do not tow vehicle from side to avoid damaging vehicle.
- If engine is not started, assist system will not work, therefore, braking and steering will be more difficult than usual. Operate carefully.
- For towing of A/T models, Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.
- If towed vehicle still cannot move, do not forcibly continue towing to avoid secondary damage to vehicle. Chery strongly recommends that you seek help from professional serviceman or Chery authorized service station.

WARNING

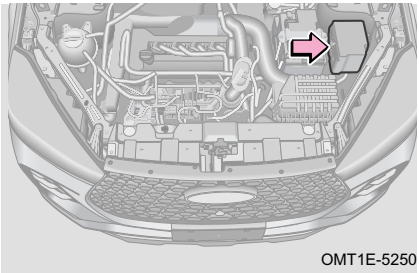
- To avoid personal injury, people other than driver should stay away from the vehicle when it is towed.
- When towing vehicle, avoid sudden starts or erratic driving maneuvers which would apply excessive force on the towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever. The towing eyelet, cable, chain or lever may break and cause vehicle damage or serious personal injury.

6-4. Fuse

Fuse Box

Fuses are used to protect electrical components and circuits to avoid short circuit or overload. If fuse is blown, the protected components and systems will not work properly.

Front compartment fuse box

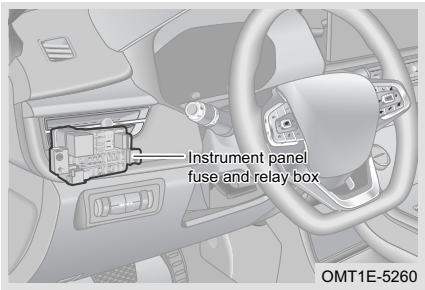


Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable;

Step 3: Remove front compartment fuse box cover to inspect or replace fuse.

Instrument panel fuse and relay box



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

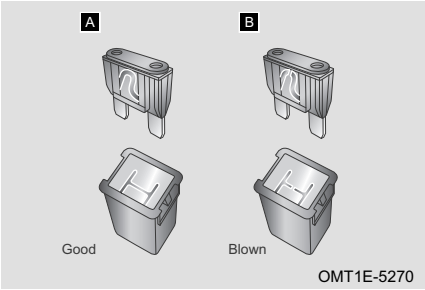
Step 2: Disconnect the negative battery terminal cable;

Step 3: Remove instrument panel lower left protector to inspect or replace fuse.

READ

- Check suspected fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout.
- To prevent damage to the vehicle, be careful when removing/installing the instrument panel lower left protector. Please contact Chery authorized service station as necessary.
- The fuse box must be clean, keep it away from dampness when opening, as dirt and moisture may damage the electrical system.

Checking Fuse

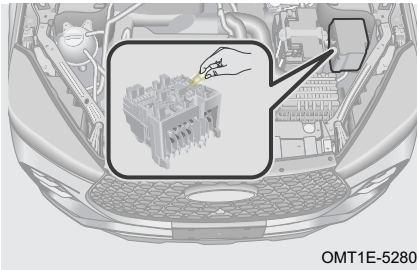


A Good fuse.

B Blown fuse.

> READ
> If the fuses are blown, they must be replaced.

Replacing Fuse



Step 1: Turn vehicle power to OFF mode;

Step 2: Check fuses according to the fuse and relay box layout;

Step 3: Pull the suspected fuse out by a fuse remover;

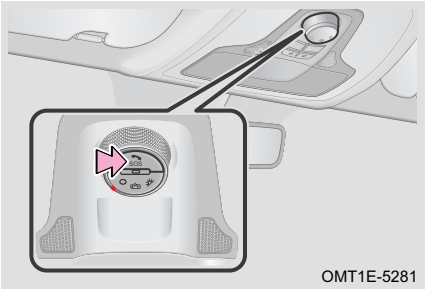
Step 4: Check if the fuse is blown. If you are not sure whether the fuse has blown, replace the suspected fuse with spare fuse that has the same amperage rating. You can see the amperage rating on the schematic diagram inside the fuse cover.

> READ
> If a spare fuse is unavailable, you can use a fuse with same specification from other unimportant electrical appliances in an emergency. It is better to purchase a set of spare fuses and put them in vehicle for emergency use.

> CAUTION
> - Do not modify any fuses or fuse boxes.
> - Only install a fuse that has the same amperage rating as used one. Never replace a fuse with a wire, even as a temporary replacement. Otherwise, this may cause serious damage to electrical appliances, or even fire.

6-5. ERA-GLONASS(If Equipped)

ERA-GLONASS



OMT1E-5281

ERA-GLONAS is a kind of emergency call function. When vehicle is involved in a certain level of impact (airbag inflated) or when driver or passenger is in an emergency and rescue is required, emergency information can be sent to service center by operating button manually, then the center will track vehicle location and promptly offer rescue according to received information.

MAINTENANCE

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance 268
Chery authorized service station is at your service 268
Safety Check 269

7-2. Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance 270
Checking Oil Level..... 271
Checking Transmission Fluid Level 272
Checking Brake Fluid Level 273
Checking Coolant Level... 273
Checking Radiator and Condenser..... 275
Checking Drive Belt..... 275
Checking Tires 276
Tire Rotation..... 277
Checking Battery..... 278
Checking Air conditioning filter 278
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 278
Checking Wiper Blades... 279

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Card... 281
Maintenance Schedule.... 283
Technical Data 287

7-1. Repair and Maintenance

Repair and Maintenance

There are two types of repair and maintenance: One is normal maintenance, which can be done by the customers; The other is scheduled maintenance, inspection and repair, which needs to be completed by Chery authorized service station.

For the details of regular maintenance, inspection and repair methods, please refer to "Regular Maintenance" in this section; Regular maintenance can be helpful for you to found and eliminate potential dangers in time to prevent malfunctions. Regular maintenance of your vehicle is essential. Please strictly follow the maintenance schedule of "User Manual" to perform maintenance, ensuring that your vehicle maintains the best performance and good operating conditions, thus effectively extending the service life of the vehicle.

Please use the oil fluid recommended by Chery, or your vehicle may be damaged.

Chery authorized service station is at your service

Chery authorized service station

Only OEM parts and materials can extend your vehicle's service life. Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. only supplies OEM parts to Chery authorized service station located worldwide. Therefore, only OEM parts of Chery authorized service station can be used.

Chery authorized service station is service professionals and is exclusively authorized by Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. For vehicle service, please remember that your authorized service station knows your vehicle best, and has the professional technicians and OEM parts to satisfy your needs.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION
Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, steering fluid (if equipped), battery and tire only can be disposed at a qualified waste disposal station or consult with supporting manufacturers about disposal caution. Do not take out them as household garbage or drain them into the public drainage system.

Service Arrangements

When visit Chery authorized service station for vehicle service, make sure to carry all required documents. Not all the work to be performed is covered by the warranty. For detailed expenses, consult your service advisor. Keep a service record on your vehicle. Usually, this record can provides informations for later troubleshooting.

Prepare a list sheet covering vehicle malfunctions and specific service items. If you have had an accident or any item serviced is not included in the service records, let your service advisor know.

If you list many service items and you must fetch your vehicle on the day, communicate with your advisor to rank the items by priority.

Safety Check

It is better to perform safety check before driving vehicle, which can improve driving safety and enjoy driving pleasure.

⚠ WARNING
While inspecting vehicle, do not start the vehicle.

Daily check
Check whether paint surface is scratched, light shade is damaged, body is tilted, wheel bolts are missed or loosened, water/oil leakage of chassis occurs, door/hood/back door/glass is damaged.
Check that engine oil level, brake fluid level, coolant level, steering fluid level (if equipped) and windshield washer fluid level is normal.
Check cold tire pressure and conditions (such as: wear, swelling, aging cracks, mechanical damages, etc). Also check the spare tire.
Check whether seat belt buckles are locked securely. Make sure belts are not worn or frayed.
Check whether lighting of lamps is normal.
Check whether meter indicators are normal.

Monthly check
Clean vehicle surface, inside of engine hood (dust on surface of radiator and condenser, and remaining oil of engine body), vehicle interior and luggage compartment.
Check assembly, pipes, hoses and tanks for leaks; Check whether battery and cable are corroded and loosened; Check whether circuits are damaged, loosened or disconnected; Check that water/oil leakage of chassis occurs.
Check whether air condition is operated properly.
Check whether parking brake is operated properly.
Check whether spare fuses and spare tools (such as: jack, wheel bolt wrench, etc.) are equipped.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Used engine oil, brake fluid, coolant, batteries and tires can be disposed only by qualified waste disposal agencies, or consult supporting manufacturers for disposal of them. It is not allowed to discard them with household waste or discharge them into public drainage system.

7-2. Scheduled Maintenance

Scheduled Maintenance

Be sure to follow the correct maintenance procedures provided in this section if you perform do-it-yourself maintenance.

This section only lists the simple maintenance instructions which can be performed by customers. However, there are still many items that have to be maintained by qualified technicians with special tools.

CAUTION

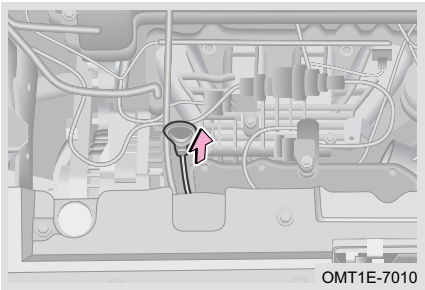
- Check if the tools, cotton, etc. are left in the cabin before closing the hood.
- Do not drive vehicle with the air filter removed, otherwise, excessive engine wear could occur.
- Correctly add coolant, brake fluid, washing fluid to the appropriate level. If some fluid splashes onto the vehicle, be sure to immediately wash it off with a wet cloth, to avoid damage to the painted surface.

WARNING

- If the engine is very hot, do not open the coolant reservoir cap to prevent scalding injury.
- When the engine is running, keep hands, clothing and tools away from engine drive belts and cooling fan.
- Do not smoke near fuel filler or battery, otherwise, it may cause sparks or open flames, resulting in a fire.
- There is a high voltage in the electronic ignition system. Do not touch these components while the engine is running or the engine start stop switch is turned on.
- Right after driving, engine, radiator, exhaust manifold and cylinder head cover will be very hot, so never touch them. Because cooling fun may automatically start and run at any time, prevent the clothes (such as: ties) from getting caught in the fan, which may cause personal injury .

Checking Oil Level

Checking Engine Oil



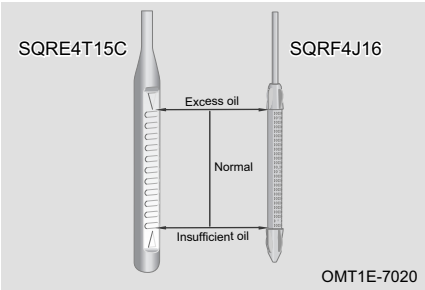
With the engine stalling and cooled down, check the oil level with the dipstick.

Step 1: Warm up the engine and then stop the vehicle on a level ground. Wait about 5 minutes after turning off engine.

Step 2: Open the engine hood, pull out the dipstick and wipe it with a clean cloth.

Step 3: Insert the dipstick to the bottom steadily and gently.

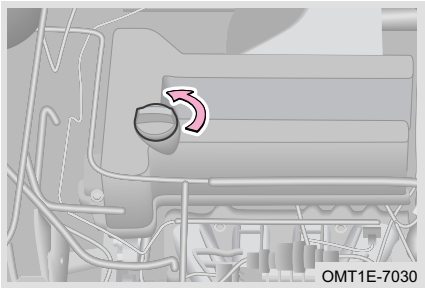
Step 4: Leave the vehicle as is for approximately 3 seconds, pull out the dipstick again and check if oil level is proper.



Put a cloth under the dipstick to avoid oil spilling onto engine or vehicle body.

Do not check the oil level immediately after the engine warms up, and wait until the oil returns into the bottom of engine.

Add Engine Oil



Step 1: Turn the engine oil filler cap counterclockwise to open it.

Step 2: Use the funnel to add a small amount of engine oil for several times and check the oil level with a dipstick again.

Step 3: When the level is within the correct range, turn the engine oil filler cap clockwise to tighten it.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Do not discard the waste engine oil and filter in the household rubbish and sewer or on the ground. Otherwise, it will cause serious environmental pollution. Please dispose it according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

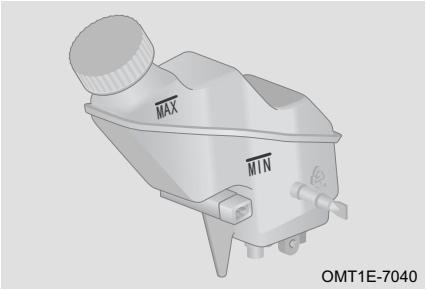
CAUTION

- Do not overfill oil, or it may cause damage to engine.
- Only engine oil recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If oil is accidentally spilled on the surface of the engine during refueling, clean the spilled oil with canvas and other tools before tightening the engine oil filler cap.
- The engine oil filler cap cannot be placed up side down after removal to prevent misjudgment caused by oil backflow, and prevent oil flowed through seal ring from overflowing by itself after assembly again, which results in an illusion of oil leakage from the engine oil filler cap.

Checking Transmission Fluid Level

Checking, adding and replacing of transmission fluid should be done by professionals, please contact Chery authorized service station.

Checking Brake Fluid Level



OMT1E-7040

Brake fluid level should be between the "MIN" and "MAX" marks. If the level is in the "MIN" mark or below, add brake fluid and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

CAUTION

- As the brake fluid has high water absorbability, do not leave the brake fluid reservoir cap open for a long period of time.
- Only brake fluid recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- If some brake fluid splashes onto the painted surface of vehicle body, be sure to clean it with a wet sponge or wash it off with water to avoid corroding the parts or painted surface.

WARNING

Never allow brake fluid to contact your skin or eyes. If the brake fluid splashes into your eyes, or on your skin, flush the area immediately with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Coolant Level

Checking Coolant

OMT1E-7050

When engine is cold, the coolant level should be between the "MAX" and "MIN" marks. If the level is in the "MIN" mark or below, add coolant and contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Adding Coolant

Step 1: When the engine is cold, open the coolant reservoir cap, and add coolant until reaching "MAX" mark.

Step 2: Start and run the engine to a normal temperature. Observe the coolant level in the reservoir all the time. If the level falls below "MIN" mark, add coolant to an appropriate level until the coolant level does not fall down further.

Step 3: Turn off engine and check if coolant level is correct after engine cools down. If not, repeat above operations until level is normal.

Step 4: Install the coolant reservoir cap securely.

CAUTION

- If coolant level falls down too fast, check radiator, water hose and water pump for leakage.
- Only brake fluid recommended by Chery can be used. Otherwise, all the direct or indirect loss incurred are at customer's own risk.
- Do not use coolant with poor quality, because the engine becomes excessively hot as running and inferior coolant cannot provide sufficient cooling and corrosion protection.

WARNING

- When engine is hot, the cooling system will be under high pressure. In this case, do not open the coolant radiator cap, otherwise, the escaping steam may cause scalding injury.
- The coolant is poisonous, so pay extreme caution not to spray the liquid on any part of the vehicle, human body or ground when adding coolant. If the coolant accidentally gets onto your skin or into eyes, please wash the affected area with a great quantity of water. Get emergency medical attention immediately if necessary.

Checking Radiator and Condenser

After the vehicle runs for a period of time, the front surface of condenser and radiator could be blocked with some insects, leaves and other objects, which could affect the performance of air conditioner and cooling system, resulting in air conditioner operating improperly and cooling system overheating. It is necessary to clean radiator and condenser at the time.

Condenser: Clean the condenser by blowing compressed air from rear to front through the radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

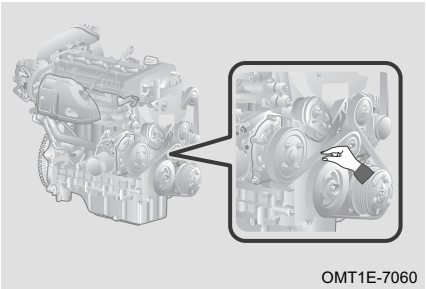
Radiator: It is recommended to clean the radiator surface once a year. With engine turned off and cooled down, use compressed air or water to clean the radiator fins and blow off the insects and leaves, etc. Air and water pressure should not exceed 150 kPa. Otherwise, the radiator fins could be damaged.

CAUTION

- The material of radiator fins has good thermal conductivity, which is used to cool the coolant; Do not brush the fins, or it may cause damage to the fins, affecting the cooling effect.
- Do not spray water on the hot radiator while the engine is hot, otherwise, the generated high temperature steam may result in personal injury; Clean radiator when the engine is turned off and cools down.

Checking Drive Belt

Drive belt will be extended after using a period of time, and the belt tension is not enough, which may damage the vehicle, so it is necessary to regularly check the belt tension.



Step 1: Vehicle power is turned to OFF mode.

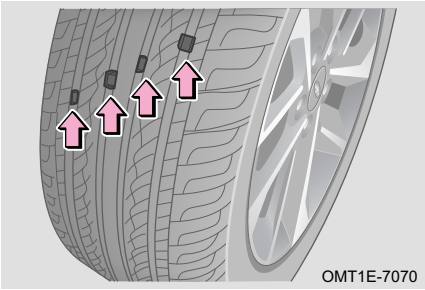
Step 2: Twist the belt with your fingers to check the rotation angle of belt.

Step 3: If rotation angle is more than 90°, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

WARNING

When checking the drive belt tension, turn off the engine and cool it down to ensure that the engine belt is static.

Checking Tires



Check the tire tread for tread wear mark. When tread wear reaches its limit, tread will be in the same plane as the wear band. If such condition occurs, it indicates that performance and safety of tire seriously decrease, and replacement is necessary.

ENVIRONMENTAL PROTECTION

Never discard a disposed tire carelessly. It should be handled according to the local regulations regarding to environmental protection.

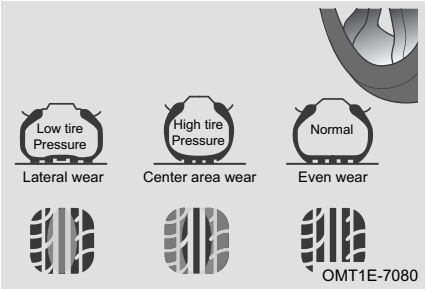
CAUTION

- It is normal that the tire inflation pressure increases after driving for a period of time.
- If the tire needs to be inflated frequently, please visit Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair as soon as possible.
- Use a tire pressure gauge to check cold tire inflation pressure. Visual inspection of a tire may cause inaccurate estimation on inflation pressure.
- If air leakage occurs while driving, do not continue to drive. Driving even a short distance can damage a tire beyond repair.
- Tire pressure monitoring system (TPMS) can monitor tire pressure in real time (For details, please refer to "5-8. Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS)").
- Be sure to install tire valve caps properly. Otherwise, dirt could get into the valve core and cause blockage. If the caps are lost, install new ones immediately.

Incorrect tire inflation pressure will lead to excessive fuel consumption, shorten the tire service life and reduce the vehicle stability. Therefore, you should drive the vehicle with proper tire pressure (For provisions about the tire inflation pressure, please refer to the tire pressure label on driver side B pillar). If a tire often leaks or cannot be properly repaired due to a cut or other damages, it should be replaced.

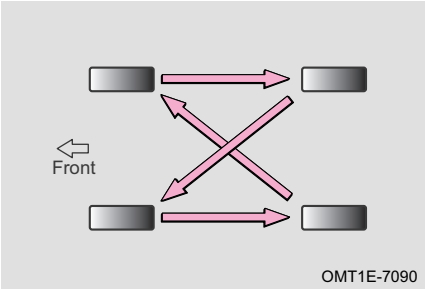
WARNING

Be sure to keep proper tire inflation pressure. Otherwise, the following conditions may occur and result in an accident, causing death or serious injury:



- Excessive wear.
- Poor handling.
- Uneven wear.
- Poor sealing of the tire bead.
- Wheel deformation or tire separation.
- Possibility of blowouts resulting from overheated tires.
- A greater possibility of tire damage caused by poor road conditions.

Tire Rotation



To equalize tire wear and extend tire service life, Chery recommends that you should rotate your tires approximately every 10,000 km (optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km); The tire rotation cycle may vary according to your driving habits and road surface conditions.

Observe the following precautions. Failure to do so may lead to an accident, resulting in death or serious injury:

1. Do not use tires that were used on another vehicle.
2. Do not mix tires with remarkably different tread wear.
3. Do not use tires if you do not know how they were used previously.
4. Do not mix tires with different manufacturers, models or tread patterns.
5. Do not mix differently constructed tires (such as: radial, bias-belted or bias-ply tires).
6. Speedometer affects by tire size. If the tire size (diameter) is different from the genuine one, it will not display accurate speed, and may result in accidents, such accidents loss are not covered by the warranty.

READ

We advice you to visit Chery authorized service station for tire rotation done by after-sales service workers

Checking Battery

Check and make sure that the battery terminals are not corroded and that there are no loose connections, outside cracks, or loose hold-down clamps.

Your vehicle is equipped with a maintenance-free battery. The new battery should have the same specifications with the genuine one. We advice you to visit Chery authorized service station for battery replacement.

Checking Air conditioning filter

Air conditioning filter can prevent outside dust from entering vehicle through air conditioning outlets when driving for a long period of time, and it may be blocked after being used for a long time. If efficiency of air conditioning decreases significantly, check filter and replace it as necessary.

READ

- The replacement of air conditioning filter should be performed by professionals, please contact Chery authorized service station.
- Using air conditioning with filter removed may result in degradation of dust-proof performance, affecting efficiency of air conditioning.
- A/C system for some models can achieve N95 protection, please subject to the actual vehicle.

Checking Windshield Washer Fluid

If no washer fluid can be sprayed from washer nozzles, stop operating washers and check if it is necessary to add washer fluid. If it cannot operate properly after adding washer fluid, please contact Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair.

CAUTION

- Never add antifreeze in the windshield washer fluid, because antifreeze will damage the paint.
- Do not use plain water as washer fluid when temperature is below freezing point. Otherwise, water will be frozen, causing damage to washer.
- The capacity of washer fluid reservoir is 2 L or 4.5 L, please subject to the actual vehicle.

Checking Wiper Blades

Check the roughness of wiper blade on its end using your finger. Wiper blade will not work effectively, if it is too rough.

CAUTION

- Do not use the wiper blades to remove frost or ice covered on the windshield.
- When the blades are lifted for maintenance, it is required to enter maintenance mode (for details, please refer to "2-8. Wiper System"), the center connector position of the blades should be properly picked up.
- When there are pits on the windshield that struck by gravel, please maintain it timely.
- In winter, make sure that the wipers are not frozen to the glass before operating them to avoid damaging the wiper blades.
- Butter, silicone and fuel may cause the wiper blades to operate improperly, and it is recommended to clean the wiper blades with washer fluid.

Maintaining wiper blades

1. Do not use high-pressure water jet to directly wash the wiper blades while washing the vehicle, or the wiper blades could be deformed.
2. In order to prevent the formation of schlieren, it is recommended to clean wiper blades using glass detergent regularly once a week.
3. After washing the vehicle in the automatic car washer, apply pure water to rinse the windshield and blades and remove the remaining wax layer.
4. For safety, it is advised to replace the wiper blades once or twice a year, the wiper blades can be purchased at Chery authorized service station.
5. Do not operate wipers when windshield is dry. Doing so may scratch glass, resulting in permanent damage to wiper blades.
6. Do not clean the windshield with fuel, nail polish remover, paint thinner or similar liquid, which can damage the wiper blades.
7. When the windshield surface is frosted or frozen, or when dry soil, insect, sticker or other solid particles are attached to the windshield surface, clean them with a wet cloth in time. Do not use a dry cloth or remove them with wiper blades directly, otherwise it will damage the glass and wiper blades.

Using wipers

1. Do not swing the wiper arm manually, otherwise it may damage the wiper.
2. When there is snow, leaves, branch and other objects, they should be cleaned before operating the wiper.
3. Washer fluid should be added on time, please use the windshield washer fluid as specified in this manual, and do not use tap water instead.
4. In cold weather, always check if the wiper blades are frozen on the windshield before using. If they are frozen on the windshield, always unfreeze before using. Failure to do so may cause damage to the wiper motor and wiper blades.
5. Unfreezing method: Use air conditioning heating and ventilation device to warm up. Do not pour hot water directly to blades, otherwise, windshield may break or wiper blades may deform.

7-3. Regular Maintenance

First Maintenance Card

Maintenance card for the first 5,000 km (within 6 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)	
Date	
Mileage	
Using properties	
License plate number	
Ownerinformation	
Name	
Address	
Telephone number	
Job	
E-Mail	
Delivery date	
License plate number	
Vehicle data	
Vehicle identification number (VIN)	
Engine number	
Transmission number	
Options	
Authorized service station seal	
Owner signature	

Maintenance card for the first 5,000 km (within 6 months after purchasing vehicle) (for general area)				
Date:_____ Mileage: _____				
Check Items	1	Check lubrication system, cooling system and fuel system for leakage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	2	Replace engine oil and oil filter.	Y ☐	N ☐
	3	Check transmission fluid level and color. Add if necessary.	Y ☐	N ☐
	4	Check coolant level. Add coolant or adjust concentration if necessary.	Y ☐	N ☐
	5	Check transmission for leakage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	6	Check steering tie rod boot for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	7	Check propeller shaft constant velocity universal joint boot for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	8	Check brake fluid for leakage and brake pipes for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	9	Check if brake sub cylinders work normally.	Y ☐	N ☐
	10	Check if tire inflation pressure is as specified.	Y ☐	N ☐
	11	Check belt tension of alternator and A/C compressor. Adjust tension if necessary.	Y ☐	N ☐
	12	Check hood hinge and tab.	Y ☐	N ☐
	13	Check A/C system for leakage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	14	Check installation condition for steering universal joint boot and check for damage.	Y ☐	N ☐
	15	Check if gears of transmission shift smoothly.	Y ☐	N ☐
	16	Check coupling bolts between chassis and vehicle body for looseness.	Y ☐	N ☐
	17	Check seat belts for correct operation.	Y ☐	N ☐
	18	Check engine working condition, electronic injection parameters and emission while idling.	Y ☐	N ☐
	19	Check if mechanisms function properly by testing driving.	Y ☐	N ☐

Maintenance Schedule

The maintenance schedule lists vehicle maintenance items that need to be carried out. Please go to Chery authorized service station for maintenance according to mileage in maintenance schedule.

For general area, maintenance interval is 10,000 km or 12 months (whichever comes first) after first maintenance is performed.

If you vehicles always used in severe driving conditions, you should follow the maintenance requirement each 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first).

I: Inspect, adjust, clean or replace if necessary; R: Replace.

For severe driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	**Months**	**6**	**12**	**18**	**24**	**30**	**36**	**42**	**48**	**54**	**60**
	Km×1,000	**5**	**10**	**15**	**20**	**25**	**30**	**35**	**40**	**45**	**50**
For general driving conditions											
Maintenance Item	**Months**	**12**	**24**	**36**	**48**	**60**	**72**	**84**	**96**	**108**	**120**
	Km×1,000	**10**	**20**	**30**	**40**	**50**	**60**	**70**	**80**	**90**	**100**
Meter Indicating System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Video and Entertainment System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Diagnostic Tester Inspection		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Front Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Rear Wiper Blades		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Wiper System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Cooling Effect		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning System		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Conditioning Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Coolant Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Freezing Point of Coolant		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Fluid		It is recommended to replace every 2 years or 40,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Brake Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Water Content of Brake Fluid		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil		R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R	R
Engine Oil Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For severe driving conditions											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Transmission Fluid(621MHB)		Replace every 1 year or 30,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid(025CHC)		40,000 km for the first time, no need to replace after that.									
Transmission Fluid(730DHB)		Replace every 60,000 km.									
Power Steering Fluid (If Equipped)		Replace every 2 year or 30,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Transmission Fluid Level		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Fuel Filter		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Battery Voltage		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Shock Absorber		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Propeller Shaft and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Chassis Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Gear		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Column		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Steering Link Ball and Boot		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Appearance		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Pattern		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Spare Tire Inflation Pressure		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Torque of Wheel Bolt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Tire Rotation		It is recommended to rotate your tires every 10,000 km (the optimal adjustment range is 5,000 - 7,000 km).									
Spark Plug		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Brake Plate		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Air Filter		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Drive Belt		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Engine Oil Pan and Drain Bolts		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I

For severe driving conditions											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48	54	60
	Km×1,000	5	10	15	20	25	30	35	40	45	50
For general driving conditions											
Mainte-nance Item	Months	12	24	36	48	60	72	84	96	108	120
	Km×1,000	10	20	30	40	50	60	70	80	90	100
Transmission Housing Body		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Related Fluid Line (such as steering, brake, fuel etc.) and Wire Harness		I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I	I
Charcoal Canister Filter (If Equipped)		Replace every 3 years or 60,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Timing Belt (If Equipped)		Replace every 3 years or 100,000 km (whichever comes first).									
Timing Chain (If Equipped)		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Battery		Maintenance-free (except for the cause of failure).									
Throttle Valve		It is recommended to clean every 15,000 km.									
Four-wheel Alignment		Check four-wheel alignment every 20,000 km and adjust if necessary.									
Fuel Vapor Rubber Pipe		It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km (which ever comes first).									
Refueling Hose of Fuel		It is recommended to replace every 5 years or 200,000 km for products made of ordinary rubber (such as NBR+PVC/CSM, etc.) (whichever comes first); It is recommended to replace every 10 years or 500,000 km for products made of fluororubber (whichever comes first). It is recommended to re-place the above hoses timely which may cause performance defect such as crack.									

READ

- The frequency of scheduled inspection and maintenance services in the table is minimal. However, it may be necessary that they be performed more frequently depending on road conditions, weather, atmospheric conditions and vehicle usage. These conditions may differ from one country to another. Therefore, there may be special requirement in your country. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance schedule applied to your vehicle.
- Continue periodic maintenance beyond 100,000 km or 120 months by returning to the third column of the maintenance schedule and adding 100,000 km or 120 months to the column headings.
- For special area, there may be special maintenance specifications. We recommend that you ask your Chery authorized service station for the actual maintenance specifications applied to your vehicle.

CAUTION

- The engine oil and oil filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- It should be checked every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.
- The lubricant should be replaced every 5,000 km or 6 months (whichever comes first) if the vehicle drives in the following areas.
  - High humidity areas.
  - Mountainous areas.
  - Extremely cold and hot areas.
  - Drive on rough roads (bumpy roads, gravel roads, snow, etc.) for a long time.
  - Drive on mountain roads, uphill/downhill for a long time.
  - Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently.
  - In many cases, drive in high temperature (higher than 32℃), heavy traffic urban road.
  - When used as a police car, taxi, commercial vehicle, trailer, etc.
- The air filter and air conditioning filter should be replaced more frequently if the vehicle drives under severe conditions mentioned in the following examples*.

*Examples of severe driving conditions:

- Drive in extremely cold and hot weather (only for engine oil, engine oil level, steering and suspension system).

⚠ CAUTION

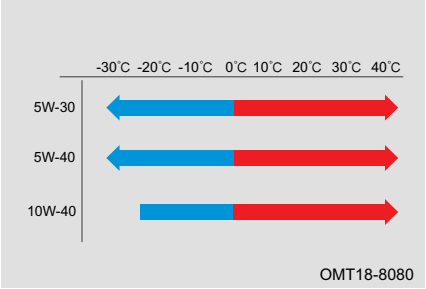
- Drive the vehicle for a short distance frequently (only for engine oil, engine oil level, disc brake pads and discs /front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums).
- Drive on dusty roads (only for air cleaner element, disc brake pads and discs /front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive on rough and/or muddy roads (only for disc brake pads and discs / front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, air filter element for the climate control system).
- Drive in areas where road salt or other corrosive materials are used (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs/front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).
- In the coastal areas (only for fuel system, lines and connections, disc brake pads and discs /front and rear axle boots and axle shaft joint portions, brake lining and drums, inspect brake lines and check operations of parking and service brake system, steering and suspension system).

Technical Data

Fluid Name	Specification	After-sale Maintenance
Oil (SQRE4T15C)	SM SAE-5W-30 SM SAE-5W-40 SM SAE-10W-40	4.7 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Oil (SQRF4J16)	SM SAE-5W-30	4.3 ± 0.2 L (replace the oil and oil filter at the same time)
Transmission Fluid (621MHB)	FUCHS GL-4 75W-90	2.5 ± 0.1 L
Transmission Fluid (025CHC)	CVTF WCF-1	7.3 ± 0.2 L
Transmission Fluid (730DHB)	FUCHS Pentosin FFL- 7A	4.25 ± 0.2 L
Coolant (SQRE4T15C)	Full Organic Antifreeze (LEC-II)	9 L
Coolant (SQRF4J16)	Full Organic Antifreeze (LEC-II)	7.5 L
Brake Fluid	DOT4	/
Spark Plug	3707AAG	/

⚠ CAUTION
Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please contact Chery authorized service station for details.

Oil Grade Specifications	Oil Grade Definition
SM	Quality grade of oil
SAE	English abbreviation for American society of automotive engineers
5W	The lower the viscosity at low temperature, the stronger the ability to adapt to the cold, and the better the low temperature start-up performance
40	The higher the index of high temperature resistance, the higher the viscosity, suitable for high speed operation of the engine



According to the requirements of the ambient temperature in your area, select the oil of the corresponding quality level in combination with the table above.

When the ambient temperature is extremely low, if the engine oil of SM SAE-10W-40 is used, the engine may be difficult to start. Therefore, it is recommended to use SM SAE-5W-30 or oil with lower viscosity grade. The SM SAE-5W-30 oil is recommended from the viewpoint of oil consumption.

⚠ CAUTION

- Only use the oil fluid recommended by Chery. Other fluids may damage the related vehicle systems.
- Only Chery genuine parts and fluids can be used, otherwise your claim rights will be affected.
- The above filling amount is only for reference. The specific filling amount should be based on the actual vehicle measurement.
- Filling amount is equal to discharging amount when there is no oil leakage for automatic transmission, please contact Chery authorized service station for details.

SPECIFICATION

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 290
Vehicle Product Label..... 291
Engine Number..... 291
Microwave Window..... 291

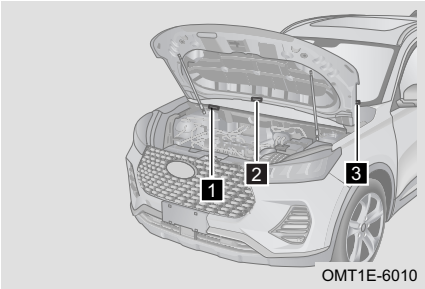
8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions..... 292
Vehicle Model and Type 293
Vehicle Weight..... 294
Vehicle Performance 295
Engine Performance..... 296
Fuel System 296
Cooling System 297
Suspension System 297
Steering System..... 298
Brake System..... 298
Wheel Alignment..... 299
Wheel and Tire..... 300
Battery..... 300
Light Bulb Specification... 301
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components..... 302

8-1. Label Location

Vehicle Identification Number (VIN)

■ Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) on actual vehicle



1 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located on lower right of engine compartment drip channel garnish.

2 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located on hood as shown in the illustration.

3 Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) is located on upper left of driver side instrument panel, and can be seen from the outside through the front windshield.

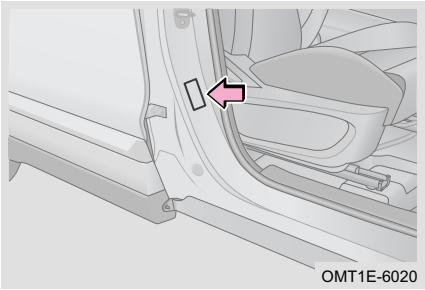
READ

- It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.
- If VIN needs to be read, it is recommended to read the data through the operation of Chery authorized service station professional serviceman.

CAUTION

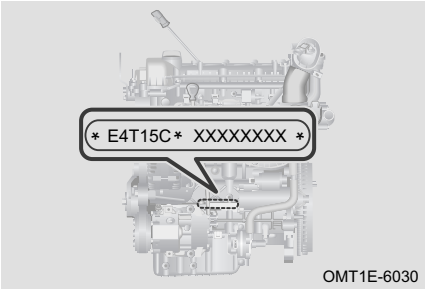
It is forbidden to cover, paint, weld, cut, drill or remove Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) and areas around it.

Vehicle Product Label


OMT1E-6020

Vehicle product label is fixed on right quarter outer panel.

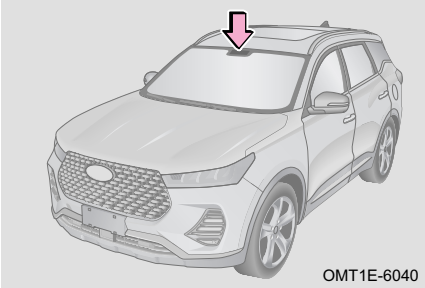
Engine Number



OMT1E-6030

Engine number is located on engine block as shown in the illustration.

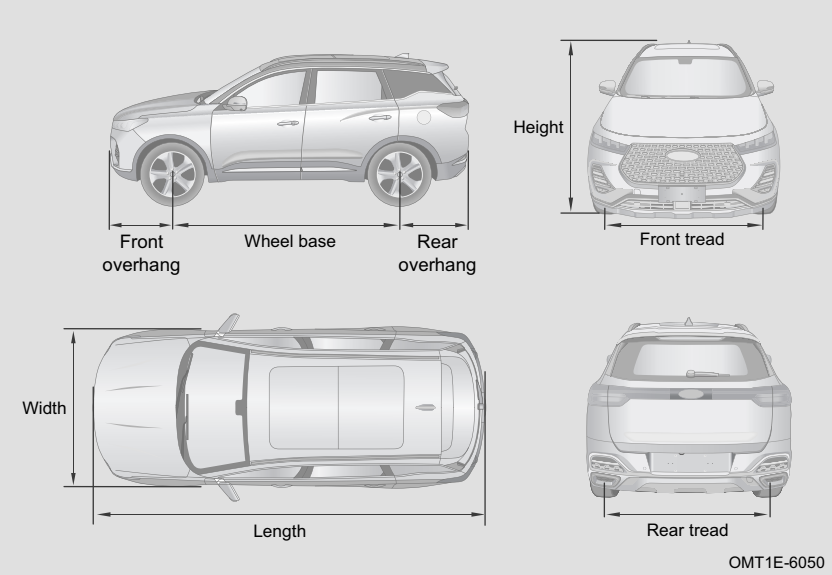
Microwave Window


OMT1E-6040

The microwave window is located at right side on back of front windshield inside rear view mirror where is for wireless RF signal transmission and installation of automotive electronic identification.

8-2. Vehicle Specifications

Vehicle Dimensions



Vehicle Model		SQR7150T1E9/SQR7150T1ET9/ SQR7160T1ET9
Overall Size	Length (mm)	4,500
	Width (mm)	1,842
	Height (mm)	1,705
Wheel Base (mm)		2,670
Tread	Front (mm)	1,550/1,556
	Rear (mm)	1,550/1,556
Overhang	Front (mm)	889/897
	Rear (mm)	931/933

Vehicle Model and Type

Vehicle Model	SQR7150T1E9	SQR7150T1ET9	SQR7160T1ET9
Vehicle Type	4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, two-box, five-door, five-seat, integral body, left-hand drive		4 × 2 front-wheel drive, front-wheel steering, transverse front-engine, two-box, five-door, five-seat, integral body (or non transverse), left-hand drive
Engine Model	SQRE4T15C		SQRF4J16
Engine Type	Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft, turbocharging, intercooler		Vertical, 4-cylinder in-line, water-cooled, 4-stroke, double overhead camshaft
Fuel Supply Type	Multiport sequential electronic injection		Direct injection
Transmission Model	621 MHB	025 CHC	730 DHB

Vehicle Weight

Items		Parameters		
Vehicle Model		SQR7150 T1E9	SQR7150 T1ET9	SQR7160 T1ET9
Vehicle Curb Weight (kg)		1,421	1,465	1,482/1,497
Vehicle Curb Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	819	859	863/870
	Rear Axle (kg)	602	606	619/627
Manufacturer Maximum Loaded Weight (Including Passengers) (kg)		1,987	1,987	1,987
Manufacturer Maximum Total Weight (kg)		1,887	1,887	1,887
Manufacturer Maximum Total Axle Weight	Front Axle (kg)	982	996	982
	Rear Axle (kg)	905	892	905
Seating Capacity (Including Driver) (Person)		5		

⚠ WARNING

Please follow the vehicle load (if applicable) specified in the instruction manual and do not exceed the allowable total weight. Otherwise, the brake and handling performance of the vehicle may change and may cause an personal injury and accident.

Vehicle Performance

Items			Parameters		
Vehicle Model			SQR7150T 1E9	SQR7150T 1ET9	SQR7160T 1ET9
Passing Performance	Minimum Ground Clearance (mm)		163	163	163
	Minimum Turning Diameter (m)	Left Turn (m)	11.0	11.0	11.0
		Right Turn (m)	11.0	11.0	11.0
	Approach Angle (°)		20	20	20
	Departure Angle (°)		21	21	21
	Ramp Angle	Unladen (°)	20	20	20
		Laden (°)	17	17	17
Power Performance	Maximum Vehicle Speed (km/h)		188	186	200
	Maximum Gradeability (%)		46	45	47

Engine Performance

Engine Model	SQRE4T15C	SQRF4J16
Cylinder Bore Diameter (mm)	77	77
Piston Stroke (mm)	80.5	85.8
Displacement (mL)	1,498	1,598
Compression Ratio	9.5 : 1	9.9 : 1
Power Rating (kw)	115	145
Rated Power Speed (r/min)	5,500	5,500
Maximum Torque (N·m)	230	290
Maximum Torque Speed (r/min)	1,750-4,000	2,000-4,000
Minimum Fuel Efficiency (g/kw·h)	275	270

Fuel System

Engine Model	SQRE4T15C/SQRF4J16
Fuel Type*1	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 91 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 92 or higher
	Unleaded gasoline with an octane number of 95 or higher (Unleaded super gasoline)
	E22-E100
Fuel Tank Type	Plastic fuel tank
Fuel Tank Total Capacity	51 L
Fuel Pump	Electric fuel pump

*1: Please use the fuel recommended by Chery authorized dealers.

READ

Vehicle with catalytic converters can only use unleaded gasoline. In order to avoid the accident of filling wrong fuel type, the fuel filler pipe adopts a neck-type fuel filler port design, and only the standard unleaded gasoline fuel gun can be used for fueling operation.

CAUTION

- Only use fuel type recommended by Chery.
- Using leaded gasoline will cause three-way catalytic converter to lose its effectiveness and exhaust system to function improperly.
- Gasoline numbers lower than specified may cause damage to the engine and such damage is not covered under warranty.
- If you accidentally fill leaded gasoline to the oil tank and start the engine (even if only a small amount is filled), it will cause permanent damage to the catalytic converter. Therefore, if you accidentally fill leaded gasoline, please go to Chery authorized service station for inspection and repair immediately.

Cooling System

Engine Model	SQRE4T15C	SQRF4J16
Radiator Type	Tube belt radiator	

Suspension System

Vehicle Model	SQR7150T1E9/SQR7150T1ET9/ SQR7160T1ET9
Front Suspension	Macpherson type independent suspension, unadjustable height, w/anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber
Rear Suspension	Multi-link type independent suspension, unadjustable height, w/anti-roll stabilizer bar, cone coiled spring, double adjustable shock absorber

Steering System

Vehicle Model		SQR7150T1E9/SQR7150T1ET9/ SQR7160T1ET9
Power Steering Type		Electric boost
Steering Wheel Diameter (mm)		374
Steering Gear Type		Rack & pinion steering gear
Steering Column Type		Retractable energy-absorbing steering column
Steering Wheel Adjustable Range	Up-down (mm)	34
	Front-back (mm)	40

Brake System

Vehicle Model		SQR7150T1E9/SQR7150T1ET9/ SQR7160T1ET9
Brake	Front Wheel	Disc brake
	Rear Wheel	Disc brake
Brake booster		Vacuum booster
Parking brake		Electric parking brake for rear wheels
Reasonable Range of Brake Pedal Free Travel		⩽ 25 mm
Reasonable Range of Use for Brake Friction Pair		Thickness of new front brake plate friction material: 10 mm, use limit: 2.0 mm; Thickness of new front brake disc: 25 mm, use limit: 23 mm; Thickness of new rear brake plate friction material: 9 mm, use limit: 2 mm; Thickness of new rear brake disc: 10 mm, use limit: 8 mm.

⚠ WARNING

- In the case of heavy load, the brake fluid should be replaced while the brake plates are being replaced.
- When adding brake fluid, make sure it is absolutely clean. If any dirt gets into the brake system, it may result in loss of braking performance.

Wheel Alignment

Items		Parameters
Vehicle Model		SQR7150T1E9/SQR7150T1ET9/ SQR7160T1ET9
Front Wheel	Front Wheel Camber	-25′ ± 45′
	Kingpin Caster Angle	4°14′ ± 60′
	Kingpin Inclination Angle	11°30′ ± 60′
	Front Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 5′ (one side)
Rear Wheel	Rear Wheel Camber	-42′ ± 30′
	Rear Wheel Toe-in	5′ ± 10′ (one side)
Sideslip Value		⩽ 3 m/km

Wheel and Tire

Vehicle Model		SQR7150T1E9/SQR7150T1ET9/ SQR7160T1ET9	
Tire Model		215/60R17, 225/65R17, 225/60R18, 225/55R19, T125/80R17 (Spare Tire)	
Rim Model		17X6 1/2J, 18X6 12J, 19X7J, 17x4T (Spare Tire)	
Cold Tire Inflation Pressure (kPa) (Unladen)	Front Wheel	220	
	Rear Wheel	220	
	Spare Tire	420 *1	250 *2
Tightening Torque of Wheel Nuts		130 ± 10 N·m	
Wheel dynamic balance requirements for vehicle with a maximum design speed of more than 100 km/h		Allowable residual dynamic balance quality: Card balance block side ⩽ 8 g, Paste balance block side ⩽ 10 g	

*1: Non-full size spare tire.

*2: Full size spare tire.

READ

The tire pressures listed in the table apply to cold tires. The pressure increases slightly when the tire is heated, but it is unnecessary to lower the pressure.

CAUTION

- Tire pressure should be checked at least once a month, and tire pressure is especially important at high speeds.
- In order to facilitate you to find the specified value for inflation pressure, there is adhesive sticker label on the driver doorsill, which is marked with the specified value for cold tire inflation pressure.

Battery

Vehicle Model	SQR7150T1E9/ SQR7150T1ET9	SQR7160T1ET9
Battery Model	12 V, 60 Ah	12 V, 70 Ah

Light Bulb Specification

Light Bulb Name	Nominal Light Source (Type/Model)	Replacement Advice
Headlights	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear fog light	12 V P21W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Daytime running light	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front position light	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear position light	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Stop light	12 V P21W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
High mounted stoplight	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Back-up light	12 V W16W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Front turn signal light	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Rear turn signal light	12 V PY21W	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
Side turn signal light	13.5 V 4414AAY/605ACM	Replaced by Chery authorized service station
License plate light	12 V LED	Replaced by Chery authorized service station

Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components

Components not included in vehicle length size

The following devices do not have laden function and their sizes are 50 mm or less than the vehicle's front end or rear end, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Wiper and washer

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and model, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— External sunshade device

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Step plate (or ladder), vehicle climbing step plate and handle on top of bumper used for cleaning windows.

— Rear emblem plate including LOGO

— Removable trailer or towing device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle width size

— Indirect view device

— School bus stop plate in inoperative state

The following devices do not have laden function and their one side size exceeds the side of vehicle for no more than 50 mm, and fillet radius of edge and corner is no less than 5 mm:

— Outer identification, including registered trademark, manufacturer name, origin, model name and model, engine emission, transmission type, driving type and other distinguishing identification of the vehicle

— Lights and light signal device

— Anti-collision rubber block and equivalent

— Customs sealing device and its protective device

— Device used to fixed raincloth and its protective device

— Local water drain slot: Indicated that water drain slot used to guide rain flow under driver door (or window) and passenger door, both sides of front windshield

— Flexible protruding part of splash proof system

— Retractable step plate, entering/exiting slope of coach, lifting platform and

equivalent that is in the retract state

— Locking device, hinge, handle, controller, switch

— Tire failure signal device

— Tire pressure indicator

— Deformed part of tire wall which over contact point between tire and ground

— Reversing assistance device

— Exhaust tail pipe

Components not included in vehicle height size

Soft part of antenna

Device without laden function

— Intake duck

— Indirect view device

— Current collecting device of electric vehicle (including its fixing device)

— Vehicle rear air guide device that is removable or folding, and its deployed and retracted length is no more than 2000 mm and 200 mm respectively.

— Tailboard, entering/exiting slope and equivalent that is in the retract state of horizontal length is no more than 300 mm

— Tail ladder

A

Active Speed Limit 220
Adaptive Cruise Control System (ACC) 214
Adaptive Engine Control System 188
Adjusting Steering Wheel 79
After Starting Engine 15
Air Conditioning Heating Operation 164
Air Conditioning Refrigeration Operation 162
Air Outlets Airflow Control 161
Air Quality Control System (If Equipped) 164
Airbag (SRS) 203
Anion Function (If Equipped) ...166
Anti-lock Brake System (ABS) 245
Anti-Theft System 121
Audio Button 143
Audio Control Panel (Inter-vehicle Head Unit) 139
Audio Control Panel (No disc DVD) 138
Audio Operation 140
Audio Setting 142
Automatic Air Conditioning System 155
Automatic Defogging Function (If Equipped) 166
Automatic Emergency Braking System (AEB) 229
Automatic Parking System (AUTO HOLD) 200
Automatic Transmission 191
Auxiliary Fascia Armrest Box Cooling / Warming Function (If Equipped) 167

B

Back Door 174
Back Door Emergency Opening 178
Battery 300
Before Starting Engine 14
Blind Spot Detection System (BSD)/Lane Change Assist System (LCA) 226
Brake 202
Brake System 298

C

Check the Exhaust System 18
Checking Air conditioning filter 278
Checking Battery 278
Checking Brake Fluid Level 273
Checking Coolant Level 273
Checking Drive Belt 275
Checking Fuse 264
Checking Oil Level 271
Checking Radiator and Condenser 275
Checking Tires 276
Checking Transmission Fluid Level 272
Checking Windshield Washer Fluid 278
Checking Wiper Blades 279
Chery authorized service station is at your service 268
Chery Delivery Card 5
Child Restraint Systems 103
Child-Protection Lock 127
Constant Speed Cruise System 213
Cooling System 297

D

Delivery Inspection Certificate 11
Door Mechanical Switch 126
Door Open Warning System (DOW) 227
Doors Lock Switch 125
Driving Information 29
Driving Information 38
Driving Information 50
Driving Information 63
Driving on Road Covered with Ice and Snow 21
Driving Through Water 19

E

Effective Range 119
Electric Air Conditioning System 151
Electric Parking Brake System (EPB) 197

Electric Power Steering System (EPS) 196
Electronic Stability Program System (ESP) 244
Electronic Steering Column Lock (Vehicle with Automatic Transmission) 185
Emergency Towing 262
Engine Number 291
Engine Performance 296
ERA-GLONASS 265
Extended Function 247
Exterior Lighting 86

F

First Maintenance Card 281
Follow Me Home Function 90
Front - Windshield Heating (If Equipped) 166
Front Seats 94
Fuel System 296
Fuel Tank Cap 178
Fuse Box 263

H

Hazard Light 250
Head Restraints 93
Heated Steering Wheel (If Equipped) 78
Hill Descent Control System (HDC) 221
Hood 173
Horn 78
How to Read This Manual 2

I

If Battery is Depleted 257
If Engine Coolant Temperature is High 256
If You Have a Flat Tire During Driving 252
If Your Vehicle cannot Start Normally 259
Index 2
Information Display Area 28
Information Display Area 37
Information Display Area 49
Information Display Area 62
Inside Rear View Mirror 80
Installing Child Restraint Systems 107
Installing Towing Eyelet 261
Instrument Cluster Overview 26
Instrument Cluster Overview 35
Instrument Cluster Overview 47
Instrument Cluster Overview 60
Intelligent Headlight Function (IHC) (If Equipped) 91
Interior Active Ventilation and Automatic Cleaning (If Equipped) 167
Interior Lighting 89

K

Keyless Entry 122

L

Lane Assist System 222
Lane Departure Warning System (LDW) 224
Lane Keep Assist System (LKA) 225
Light Bulb Specification 301
Light Fogging Instructions 92

M

Maintenance Schedule 283
Manual Transmission 189
Measurement Range of Vehicle Overall Size except Following Components 302
Microwave Window 291
Mode Adjustment 160
Modification and Disposal of Airbag System Components 210
Moon Roof Jam Protection Function 135
Moon Roof Remote Control Function 135

N

New Vehicle Break-in 12
New Vehicle Inspection 11
Normal Starting and Turning off 186

O

Off-road Driving 18
One-button Purification Function (If Equipped) 165
Operation/Malfunction Indicator 73
Outside Rear View Mirror 81

P

Panoramic Moon Roof (A) 132
Panoramic Moon Roof (B) 134
Panoramic View Monitor System (If Equipped) 236
Parking on Slope 16
Parking Operations 16
Parking Radar System 240
Parking View Monitor System 235
Phone-link 144
Pictorial Index 2
Power Back Door (If Equipped) 175
Power Outlet 171
Power Windows 128
"Person-to-Person" Consultative Service Card 7

R

Rear Collision Warning System (RCW) 228
Rear Cross Traffic Alert System (RCTA) 228
Recommended Child Restraint Systems 105
Reflective Vest 251
Reminder for Children Staying in Rear Seat (If Equipped) 113
Remote start (if equipped) 125
Repair and Maintenance 268
Replacing Fuse 264

S

Safety Check 14
Safety Check 269
Saving Fuel 13
Scheduled Maintenance 270
Seat Belt Pretensioner (If Equipped) 102
Seat Belts 98
Seat Heating (If Equipped) 97
Second Row Seats 96
Setting 32
Setting 43
Setting 55
Setting 67
Smart Key 116
Smart Key Vehicle Locating Function 125
Smart Vehicle Locating Function 91
Spare Tools 252
Speed Limit Assist System (SLA) 212
Starting and Turning off in Emergency 188
Steering System 298
Storage Space 168
Sun Visors and Vanity Mirrors 173
Suspension System 297
Symbols in the Manual 3

T

Table of Contents 2
Technical Data 287
Tire Chains 22
Tire Pressure Monitoring System (TPMS) (If Equipped) 233
Tire Rotation 277
TOP TETHER Upper Fixing Point 106
Towing Vehicle 260
Traffic Jam Assist System (TJA)/Integrated Cruise Assist System (ICA) 231

U

Unlocking Doors with Inside Handle 126
USB Port 172
User Registration Certificate 4

V

Vacuum Booster 201
Vehicle Dimensions 292
Vehicle Emergency Rescue 250
Vehicle Fortifying 123
Vehicle Identification Number (VIN) 290
Vehicle Model and Type 293
Vehicle Performance 295
Vehicle Power Mode 184
Vehicle Product Label 291
Vehicle Weight 294
Voice Recognition Function (If Equipped) 144

W

Warning Triangle 251
Wheel Alignment 299
Wheel and Tire 300
When Driving 15
When Driving on Slippery
Road Surfaces 19
Window Jam Protection
Function (If Equipped) 131
Window Remote Control
Function 130
Winter Driving Tips 20
Wiper Blade Replacement 85
Wiper Operation 83
Wireless Charging 136

Chery Automobile Co., Ltd. reserves the right to make changes in design and specifications at any time without notice.

All rights reserved. This document should not be reproduced or copied, in whole or in part, without the written permission of Chery Automobile Co., Ltd.